

Garth A. Bowers

The Students' Series of Latin Classics

A NEW METHOD FOR CAESAR

BY

FRANKLIN HAZEN POTTER, A.M.

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE STATE UNIVERSITY
OF IOWA

οὐ πολλὰ ἀλλὰ πολὺ

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

CHICAGO

NEW YORK

BOSTON

1923

COPYRIGHT, 1907,
By FRANKLIN HAZEN POTTER.

PREFACE

THIS book has grown out of the experimental work in Latin pedagogy which the author has carried on for several years at the State University of Iowa with the coöperation of the Iowa City public schools. It is offered as a solution of the universally recognized difficulty in passing from the beginner's book to Caesar.

The method followed is to give the particular preparation for a given chapter before the pupil attempts to read it. This makes it possible for the pupil to begin his reading of Caesar immediately after finishing the elementary book. The difficulties which the beginner in Caesar meets have been carefully studied and provided for with a view to his accumulating knowledge for future work as well as doing what is immediately before him.

It is assumed that the pupil knows a vocabulary of about three hundred common words, which are found in most beginner's books. Additional words, as they occur, are given in the special vocabularies, and all may be found in the general vocabulary at the end of the book. Idiomatic expressions, which cause the pupil to blunder with the thought or with the English translation, have been treated with the special vocabularies, and it is hoped that this feature of the book will commend itself strongly to teachers.

Hale and Buck's Latin Grammar has been taken as authority for the quantities of vowels. This has caused

some departure from the quantities with which many are familiar. Scientific investigations of the foremost American and European scholars have shown that the evidence does not justify the use of the macron over many vowels which have previously been believed to be long; the author has not deemed it wise to perpetuate these erroneous quantities.

Obvious etymologies, *e.g.* *abdūcō*, have been left for the pupil's own observation; where phonetic changes have disguised the original elements of compound verbs, the parts are indicated in the general vocabulary. The intention has been to exclude everything that would not have a direct bearing on the chief end to be sought at this stage of the pupil's work.

The subjects for study and review indicate some of the grammatical facts which the pupil must know in order to translate the given chapter. They do not constitute a systematic review of the grammar, but are suggested by what actually occurs in the text of Caesar.

When the pupil knows the words, idioms, and syntax involved in a given chapter, there still remains the difficulty due to the periodicity of Caesar's style. The short sentences given in the preliminary studies for each chapter furnish a variety of easy reading, which can be done rapidly, and which by presenting one difficulty at a time prepares the pupil for the more complicated periods of Caesar. Moreover, they will enable the pupil to see more clearly the real nature of many of the constructions which he meets in the text.

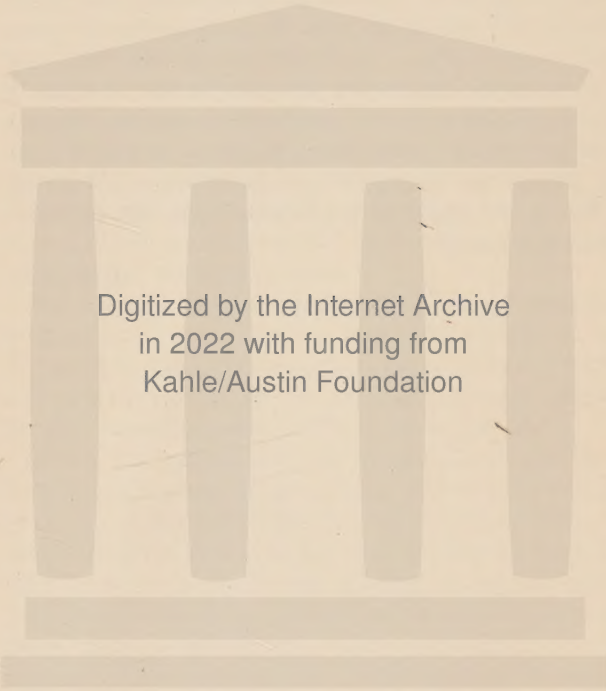
When the pupil has read the thirty chapters provided in this book, he should have enough mastery over Caesar's way of saying things to enable him to read with little

difficulty the rest of the required Caesar from a regular edition.

The author is under obligations to many teachers, whose criticism and encouragement have helped to make the book what it is. Professor E. M. Pease, the editor-in-chief of this series, has read the proof and made many helpful suggestions. Principal George R. Swain, of Bay City, Mich., has kindly allowed the use of some of the photographs which he took while following Caesar's footsteps in Gaul. Miss Helen M. Eddy, of the Winona Park School for Young Women at Winona Lake, Ind., and Mr. H. H. Fitch, of the Seattle High Schools, have read all the proof.

F. H. P.

THE STATE UNIVERSITY OF IOWA,
August, 1907.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation

CONTENTS

	PAGE
LIST OF MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS	ix
SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS	xi
INTRODUCTION	
Caius Julius Caesar	xv
Caesar's Provinces	xvi
PRELIMINARY STUDIES TO BOOK I, CHAPTERS I-XXX .	1
TEXT OF THE <i>GALLIC WAR</i> , BOOK I, CHAPTERS I-XXX .	79
VOCABULARY	1

MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
1. CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR. BRITISH MUSEUM	xiv
2. MAP: CAESAR'S PROVINCES	xvii
3. THE RHONE NEAR GENEVA	19
4. THE ARAR AT TREVoux	31
5. THE VALLEY OF THE OUDRACHE	43
6. MONT BEUVRAY, SITE OF BIBRACTE	63
7. DOWN THE ARROUX AT TOULON	65
8. MONTMORT, VIEWED FROM CAESAR'S POSITION	67
9. THE RHINE BETWEEN GERMANY AND HELVETIA	75
10. MAP: GAUL IN CAESAR'S TIME. <i>From Johnston and</i> <i>Sanford's Caesar</i>	79
11. MAP: HELVETIA	80
12. SCENE NEAR THE SUMMIT OF THE JURA MOUNTAINS	81
13. PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE	84
14. MAP: HELVETIA ON THE WEST	85
15. MAP: CAESAR'S FORTIFICATIONS ALONG THE RHONE	86
16. THE RHONE ABOVE CHANCY	87
17. THE RHONE BELOW CHANCY	88
18. SCENE IN A ROMAN CAMP. <i>From Johnston and San-</i> <i>ford's Caesar</i>	96
19. PLAN: THE STRATAGEM THAT FAILED	99
20. <i>MILITES GALLICI.</i> <i>From Johnston and Sanford's</i> <i>Caesar</i>	101
21. MAP: CENTRAL GAUL	102

	PAGE
22. VIEW FROM NEAR CROIX DE L'ARBRE	102
23. PLAN: BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII. <i>From Johnston and Sanford's Caesar</i>	103
24. SITE OF THE HELVETIAN CAMP, VIEWED FROM CAESAR'S POSITION ON THE HILL OF ARMECY	103
25. <i>PILUM. GLADIUS</i>	104
26. HILL TO WHICH THE HELVETII RETREATED	105
27. MAP: CENTRAL GAUL	106
28. SITE OF THE FINAL STRUGGLE AROUND THE BAGGAGE .	107

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS

THE material is presented in the order in which it should be taken up and learned. Have the vocabularies and idioms committed to memory as the first step in preparing for the Caesar to be immediately read. Take time in the recitation to drill the class on these word lists. In no other way can the pupil escape the "tyranny of the general vocabulary." When assigning the lesson, go over the vocabulary with the class and call up related words in both Latin and English. Explain the literal meaning of the idioms.

The subjects for study and review in each instance are suggested by the particular text and deal with grammatical items which the pupil must have in mind in order to read the Caesar intelligently. The pupil will need to look up only those which he does not thoroughly understand. Most of the terms are self-explanatory and will suggest to the pupil the necessary information without the use of a grammar; but to what extent the pupil will need to use a grammar will depend on his previous preparation and the teacher's estimate of the importance of grammatical study at this stage. If any of the terms are unfamiliar, a reference to the grammar will make clear what is intended. The teacher may choose to designate four or five topics from each lesson for special study. Sometimes the reference will not seem to correspond to the subject for which it is

given; this is due to the different ways in which the grammars treat the constructions. When hearing this part of the lesson, ask questions about each of the topics to make sure that the pupils understand them. Do not be too particular to have rules recited verbatim; the pupil's own statement may be better; it is the content of the rule, not the form, that is wanted.

Then pass to the sentences. They are all very easy, and the pupils should be prepared to translate them readily. For the average high school class the vocabulary, idioms, subjects for study and review, and the easy sentences, together with a review of some Caesar text previously read, should constitute the lesson for one day, while the advance Caesar text is to be assigned for the following day. If the class can do more, assign, *e.g.* the translation of the last part of Chapter II and the preliminary studies for the first part of Chapter III.

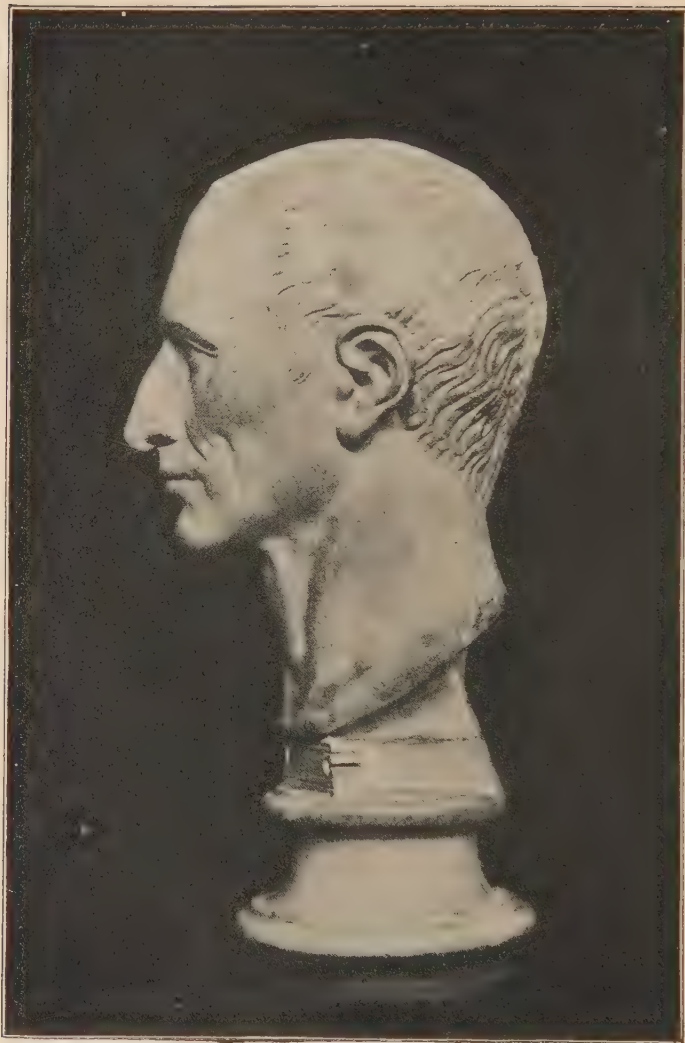
Before having a given passage in Caesar translated, question the class on the sentence-structure and the construction of individual words to make sure that the pupils understand the thought and the relations of the parts. Remember that the periodic structure of Caesar's sentences is a feature which is new to the English-speaking pupils, and do not expect too much of them at first. Finally, make the translation serve as an exercise in correct English expression.

Not all the grammars treat the same subject with equal clearness. It is desirable to have copies of two or more different grammars accessible in the school library; also the following books, which the pupils should be encouraged to read:—

CAESAR'S CONQUEST OF GAUL. By T. Rice Holmes.
Macmillan & Co.

CAESAR. By T. A. Dodge. Houghton, Mifflin & Co.

If the school has a lantern, the work can be made infinitely more interesting and profitable with a series of slides from photographs of the regions where Caesar carried on his campaigns. Such a series can be obtained from Principal G. R. Swain, Bay City, Mich., who will send a catalog of slides on request.



CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

(British Museum.)

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR belonged to an ancient Roman family which had come to Rome from Alba Longa in the reign of Tullus Hostilius. He claimed King Ancus Marcius also among his ancestors.

Caesar was born July 12, 102 B.C. (or perhaps 100 B.C.). He was not strong as a boy, but by judicious and persistent exercise, he rendered himself capable of the greatest endurance. Through a thorough education secured from the very best teachers, he became a brilliant orator and was regarded by his contemporaries as second to Cicero only.

Though an aristocrat by birth, his sympathies were with the masses. He early identified himself with the cause of the party of Marius and openly defied the express orders of the dictator Sulla. With remarkable shrewdness and foresight he avoided compromising himself with useless and hopeless political entanglements.

When a mere youth, he saw military service in Asia and distinguished himself as a diplomat and soldier. At the earliest possible age for each he held the various important public offices: he was quaestor in Spain in 68; as aedile in 65 he had supervision of the great festivals and public games; with reckless extravagance he surpassed all his predecessors in magnificence. In 63 he was praetor-elect when Cicero the consul successfully combated the conspiracy of Catiline. Caesar tried in

vain to dissuade the senate from inflicting the death penalty on the conspirators.

In 61 Caesar as *propraetor* was governor of farther Spain. The sovereignty of the Roman state over these wild peoples had been little more than nominal. Caesar set about to subject the province to his authority. Overcoming the greatest difficulties, he outgeneralled the natives, who rose against him on every hand; and within his year of office he reduced the land to subjection. His soldiers hailed him as *Imperator*; and the senate, which was never friendly disposed to him, voted him the proud distinction of a triumph. This placed Caesar in a dilemma: he wanted the consulship; he could not enter Rome to sue for this office while he was in command of an army; he could not celebrate the triumph if he dismissed his army in time to sue for the consulship. With characteristic promptness and decision he renounced the triumph and was elected consul for the year 59.

As consul he thrust aside his colleague Bibulus; and with the help of Pompey and Crassus, with whom he had previously formed a coalition, he enacted a series of much-needed laws in spite of the violent opposition of the aristocracy. He secured for himself unusual appointments; at the end of his term of office he was to be governor of Cisalpine Gaul, Transalpine Gaul, and Illyria for five years.

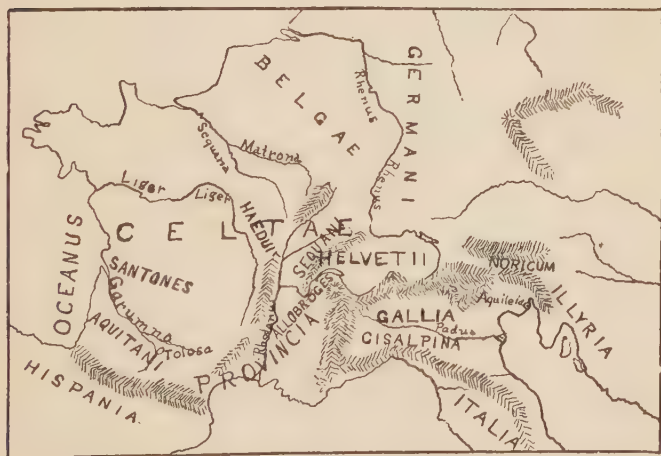
CAESAR'S PROVINCES

ABOUT 225 B.C. the Romans began to plant colonies along the river Po. All of northern Italy east of the Alps was ultimately reduced to a province called Cisalpine Gaul (Gaul this side of the Alps). The province extended as far south as the Rubicon and Arnus rivers

and had a standing army of three legions. There were ordinarily about five thousand men in a Roman legion.

The province of Gaul across the Alps (Transalpine Gaul) was organized in 121 B.C. It extended along the coast from the Alps to the Pyrenees. East of the Rhone, by the recent subjugation of the Allobroges, the Roman power had been extended as far north as Lake Geneva. One legion was stationed in this province.

Migratory hordes of Gauls had from very early times been the terror of the Romans. Since the organization of the Gallic provinces several Roman armies had been annihilated there. Wars with the more settled tribes had brought many a disaster to the legions. These wild tribes were again getting restless when Caesar, in the year 58 B.C., became the governor of both Gallic provinces and Illyria. We shall read his own account of his adventures there.



THE GALLIC WAR, BOOK I

PRELIMINARY STUDIES

CHAPTER I, FIRST PART

VOCABULARY

Aquitānī, Aquitānōrum, m., the Aquitanians, *a people living in the southwest part of Gaul.*

Belgae, Belgārum, m., the Belgians, *a people living in the northeast part of Gaul.*

Celtae, Celtārum, m., the Celts or Gauls.

commeō, commeāre, commeāvi, commeātūrus, go to and fro, visit.

continenter, adv., continuously, continually.

cultus, cultūs, m., cultivation, care, civilization.

differō, differre, distulī, dilātus, bear apart, defer, differ.

dividō, dividere, divīsī, divīsus, divide, separate.

effēminō, effēmināre, effēmināvī, effēminātus, make effeminate, weaken, enfeeble.

Garumna, Garumnae, m., the Garonne, *a river of Gaul.*

hūmānitās, hūmānitātis, f., humanity, refinement.

importō, importāre, importāvī, importātus, import.

īnstitūtum, īnstitūtī, n., habit, practice, custom, institution.

lingua, linguae, f., tongue, language.

Matrona, Matronae, m., the Marne, *a river of central Gaul.*

mercātor, mercātōris, m., a trader.

(parum, minus), minimē, *adv.,* least; by no means.

pertineō, pertinēre, pertinui, extend, pertain to, tend.

propterea, adv., on this account.

proximus, proxima, proximum, nearest, next, last.

Sēquana, Sēquanae, m., the Seine, *a river of Gaul.*

IDIOMS

ad animōs effēminandōs pertinēre, tend to weaken the courage.

inter sē differre, differ from each other.

minimē saepe, very seldom.

propterea quod, because.

A perfect participle may be used as a predicate adjective. This use must not be confused with the use of participles in compound tenses of the passive voice. If *divisa est* is regarded as a compound tense, *Gallia divisa est* means "Gaul has been divided." If *divisa* is regarded as a predicate adjective, it means "Gaul is divided" (in a divided state).

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Genitive of the Whole. (2) Dative with *Proximus*. (3) Ablative of Specification. (4) Enclitic Use of *Cum* when used with Personal and Relative Pronouns.

NOTE. When studying a reference in your grammar always examine carefully the examples used to illustrate the rule. References are to Allen and Greenough, Bennett, Gildersleeve, Hale and Buck, and Harkness.

A. (1) 346; (2) 384; (3) 418; (4) 143, *f*; 150, *d*.

B. (1) 201; (2) 192; (3) 226; (4) 142, 4.

G. (1) 367-372; (2) 359; (3) 397; (4) 413, R. 1.

HB. (1) 346; (2) 362, III; (3) 441; (4) 418, *a*.

H. (1) 441-443; (2) 434, 2; (3) 480; (4) 175, 7; 182, 2.

TRANSLATE: Galliae ūnam partem incolunt Belgae; aliam (partem incolunt) Aquitānī; incolae tertiae partis ipsōrum linguā Celtae appellantur, nostrā linguā Galli

appellantur. Tertiam (partem incolunt iī) quī ipsōrum linguā Celtæ appellantur. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna flūmen dividit. Gallōs ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dividit.¹ Minimē ad Belgās mercātōrēs saepe commeant.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER I as far as *continenter bellum gerunt*, page 79.

CHAPTER I, LAST PART

VOCABULARY

Aquitānia, Aquitāniae, f.,
Aquitania, the country of the
Aquitaniāns.

attingō, attingere, attingi, at-
tāctus, touch, reach, border
upon.

contineō, continēre, continui,
contentus, keep together, re-
strain, bound.

cotidiānus, cotidiāna, coti-
diānum, daily, customary.

extrēmus, extrēma, extrē-
num, farthest, last, at the
end.

ferē, adv., almost, nearly; gen-
erally.

Hispānia, Hispāniae, f., Spain.

inferior, inferius, comparative
adj., lower, lower part of,
weaker.

initium, initī, n., beginning,
origin.

obtineō, obtinēre, obtinui,
obtentus, hold, occupy, se-
cure.

occāsus, occāsūs, m., setting;
occāsus sōlis, sunset, the
west.

Ōceanus, Ōceanī, m., the
ocean.

præcēdō, præcēdere, præ-
cessi, præcessurus, go be-
fore, surpass, excel.

Pyrēnaei (montēs), the Pyre-
nees (Mountains).

quoque, adv., also, too.

reliquus, reliqua, reliquum,
remaining, the rest, future.

Rhodanus, Rhodani, m., the
Rhône.

¹ The Marne and Seine rivers together are thought of as one bound-
ary; hence the compound subject, *Matrona et Sēquana*, has a singular
verb.

septentriō, septentriōnis, m., the north.	spectō. spectāre. spectāvi, spectātus, look at, look
Sēquanī, Sēquanōrum, m., the Sequanians, <i>a people of</i>	toward, face.
sōl, sōlis, m., the sun.	vergō, vergere, slope, lie, be situated.

IDIOMS

ab Sēquanīs, on the side of the Sequani.

inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs, northwest.

ad Hispāniam, near Spain.

quā dē causā, and for this reason.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Subjective Genitive. (2) Ablative of Separation.
(3) Infinitive with Verbs of Saying and Thinking.

A. (1) 343, N. 1; (2) 401; (3) 580; 582, a.

B. (1) 199; (2) 214, 2; (3) 331; 332, c), N.

G. (1) 363, 1; (2) 390, 2; (3) 528, 2.

HB. (1) 344; (2) 408, 2; (3) 589; 534, 1; 590, 1, a.

H. (1) 440, 1; (2) 464, 1; (3) 613; 611, 2.

TRANSLATE: Quā dē causā Helvētīī reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt. Helvētīī suis finibus Germānōs prohibent, aut ipsī in Germānōrum finibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum finium ūnam partem Gallī obtinent. Pars quam Gallī obtinent initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō. Ūnam partem Gallōs obtinēre dixī. Ūnam partem Gallōs obtinēre dictum est. Pars quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est attingit ab Sēquanīs flūmen Rhēnum. Aquitānia ad eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER I, LAST PART.

CHAPTER II, FIRST PART

VOCABULARY

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis, f. , conspiracy.	Lemannus (lacus), Lemanni, <i>m.</i> , Lake Geneva.
cupiditās, cupiditātis, f. , eagerness, desire.	Messāla, Messālae, m. , (Mar- cus Valerius) Messala, <i>con-</i> <i>sul in 61 B. C.</i>
dīves, Gen., dīvitis, adj. , rich ; dītissimus, -a, -um, super- lative of dīves , richest.	nōbillis, nōbile, adj. , well known, noble, eminent.
exeō, exire, exiī, exitūrus , go out, depart.	nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, f. , no- bility, the nobles.
Helvētius, Helvētia, Helvē- tium , Helvetian, of the Hel- vetii.	Orgetorix, Orgetorigis, m. , Orgetorix, <i>a Helvetian no-</i> <i>bleman.</i>
indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, in- ductus , lead on, induce ; draw on, cover.	perfacilis, perfacile, adj. , very easy.
Iūra, Iūrae, m. , Jura, <i>a chain of</i> <i>mountains in eastern Gaul.</i>	Pisō, Pisōnis, m. , (Marcus) Piso, <i>consul in 61 B. C.</i>

IDIOMS

ūnā ex parte, on one side.

id iis persuāsit, he persuaded them (to do) this.

M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus, in (the year of) the
consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Subjective Genitive. (2) Objective Genitive.
(3) Dative with *Persuāsit*. (4) Dative with Compounds.
(5) Ablative with *Ūtor*, etc. (6) Ablative of Cause.
(7) Ablative of Specification. (8) Volitive¹ Substantive

¹ The use of the subjunctive which is seen in commands, exhortations, suggestions, and the corresponding subordinate clauses, is called *volitive* in this book.

Clause. (9) Causal *Cum*-Clause. (10) Infinitive as Subject. (11) Indirect Discourse. (12) Causal Use of the Participle.

A. (1) 343, N. 1; (2) 348; (3) 367; (4) 370; (5) 410; (6) 404; (7) 418; (8) 563; (9) 549; (10) 452; (11) 589, *a*; (12) 496.

B. (1) 199; (2) 200; (3) 187, II; (4) 187, III; (5) 218, 1; (6) 219; (7) 226; (8) 295; (9) 286, 2; (10) 327; (11) 314, 2; (12) 337, 2, *f*).

G. (1) 363, 1; (2) 363, 2; (3) 346; (4) 347; (5) 407; (6) 408; (7) 397; (8) 546; (9) 586; (10) 422; (11) 527; (12) 664; 666.

HB. (1) 344; (2) 354; (3) 362, I; (4) 376; (5) 429; (6) 444; (7) 441; (8) 502, 3, *a*; (9) 526; (10) 585; (11) 534, 1, *a*; (12) 604, 2.

H. (1) 440, 1; (2) 440, 2; (3) 426; (4) 429; (5) 477; (6) 475; (7) 480; (8) 568, 2; (9) 598; (10) 615; (11) 642, 1; (12) 638, 1.

TRANSLATE: Orgetorix civitātī persuāsit ut de finibus suis exirent. Perfacile est totius Galliae imperiō potiri. (Orgetorix dixit) perfacile esse totius Galliae imperiō potiri. Id facilius iis persuāsit. Unā ex parte flumine Rhēnō Helvētiī continentur.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER II as far as *dividit*.

CHAPTER II, LAST PART

VOCABULARY

adficiō, adficere, adfēcī, adfectus , affect, afflict, visit with.	dolor, dolōris, m. , pain, grief, distress.
arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus , judge, think.	fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f. , bravery.
autem, conj. , but, moreover, on the other hand.	lātē, adv. , widely.
bellō, bellāre, bellāvī, bellātus , fight, make war.	lātītūdō, lātītūdinis, f. , width.
cupidus, cupida, cupidum, adj. , eager, fond of, ambitious for.	longitūdō, longitūdinis, f. , length.
	pateō, patēre, patuī , be open, extend.
	vagor, vagārī, vagātus , roam about, wander.

IDIOMS

in longitūdinem, in length.

his rēbus fiēbat ut, the result of these conditions was that . . .

quā ex parte, in this respect, on this account.

prō multitudīne hominū, in proportion to the number of men.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Genitive with *Milia*. (2) Accusative of Extent. 96
 (3) Substantive U-Case of Result or Actuality.
 (4) Genitive of the Gerund. 187 II

A. (1) 134, *d*; 135, *c*; (2) 425; (3) 569, 2; (4) 504.

B. (1) 80, 5; (2) 181; (3) 297, 2; (4) 338. 1, *b*).

G. (1) 95, R. 3; (2) 335; (3) 553, 3; (4) 428.

HB. (1) 131, 3; (2) 387, I; (3) 521, 3, *a*; (4) 612, I.

H. (1) 168; (2) 417; (3) 571; (4) 626.

TRANSLATE: Minus lātē vagābantur. Fiēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur. Helvētiī bellandī cupidī erant. An-

gustōs finēs habēmus. Angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur. Finēs milia passuum ducenta quadrāgintā patent. Finēs milia passuum centum octōgintā patēbant.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER II, LAST PART.

CHAPTER III, FIRST PART

VOCABULARY

addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, lead to, bring, induce.	māvī, cōfirmātus, strengthen, establish, declare, assure.
amicitia, amicitiae, f., friendship.	cōstitutō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitūtus, place, establish, appoint, resolve, determine.
auctōritās, auctōritātis, f., authority, influence.	dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, lead; think, believe.
biennium, biennī, n., two years, a period of two years.	permovēō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus, move, influence, arouse, alarm.
carrus, carrī, m., cart, wagon.	profectiō, profectiōnis, f., departure.
coēmō, coēmere, coēmī, coēemptus, buy up, purchase.	sēmentis, sēmentis, f., a sowing (of grain).
comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātus, prepare, get ready, procure.	suppetō, suppetere, suppetī, suppetitus, be on hand, hold out.
cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectus, complete, accomplish, make.	
cōfirmō, cōfirmāre, cōfir-	

IDIOMS

ad proficiscendum pertinēre, pertain to the departure.
sēmentēs quam maximās facere, sow as much land as possible.
ad eas rēs cōficiendās, for accomplishing these things.
in tertium annum, for the third year.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) *Quam* with the Superlative. (2) Purpose Clause.
 (3) Informal Indirect Discourse. (4) Complementary
 Infinitive. (5) Gerund. (6) Gerundive.

A. (1) 291, c; (2) 531, 1; (3) 592; (4) 456; (5) 506; (6) 506.

B. (1) 240, 3; (2) 282; (3) 323; (4) 328, 1; (5) 338, 3;
 (6) 339, 2.

G. (1) 303, R. 1; (2) 545; (3) 508, 3; (4) 423, 2; (5) 432;
 (6) 432.

HB. (1) 241, 4; (2) 502, 2; (3) 535, a; (4) 586; (5) 612, III;
 (6) 612, III.

H. (1) 159, 2; (2) 568; (3) 652; (4) 607; (5) 628; (6) 628.

TRANSLATE: Ea quae ad proficiendum pertinent comparant. Constituērunt ea quae ad proficiendum pertinērent comparāre. Constituērunt iumentōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere. Constituērunt sēmentēs quam maximās facere. Constituērunt cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium nōbīs satis est. Biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER III as far as *cōfirmant*.

CHAPTER III, SECOND PART

VOCABULARY

acceptus, accepta, acceptum,
 acceptable, liked.

Casticus, Castici, *m.*, name of
 a Sequanian chief.

Catamantāloedēs, Cataman-

tāloedis, *m.*, name of a Sequanian chief.

dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dē-
 lēctus, choose, select.

Diviciācus, Diviciāci, *m.*,

Diviciacus, <i>a Haedum chief, friendly to the Romans.</i>	<i>lēgatiō, lēgatiōnis, f., embassy.</i>
Dumnorix, Dumnorigis. m., Dumnorix, <i>brother of Diviciacus, but unfriendly to the Romans.</i>	principātus, principātūs, m., leadership, supremacy.
Haeduus, Haedua, Haeduum, of the Haeduans, <i>a tribe of central Gaul; as noun, a Haeduan.</i>	suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpi, susceptus, take up, undertake, begin.

IDIOMS

plēbī acceptus, popular with the common people.
in mātirimōnium dare, give in marriage.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Nominative as Predicate. (2) Accusative of Duration. (3) Volitive Substantive Clause. (4) Dative with *Acceptus*. (5) Ablative of Time.

A. (1) 393, *a*; (2) 423; (3) 563; (4) 383; (5) 423.

B. (1) 177, 3; (2) 181; (3) 295, 1; (4) 192, 1; (5) 230.

G. (1) 206; (2) 336; (3) 546; (4) 359; (5) 393.

HB. (1) 392, *b*; (2) 387, II; (3) 502, 3; (4) 362, I; (5) 439.

H. (1) 410, 1; (2) 417; (3) 568, 2; 565; (4) 434; (5) 486.

TRANSLATE: Catamantāloedēs ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat. Orgetorix Casticō persuādet ut rēgnū in civitāte suā occupāret.¹ Dumnorix Haeduus eō tempore principātum in civitāte obtinēbat. Orgetorix Dumnorigī ut rēgnū occupāre cōnārētur persuādet.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER III as far as *dat*.

¹ Though *persuādet* is present in form, it narrates a past event; hence *occupāret* is in the imperfect tense.

CHAPTER III, LAST PART

VOCABULARY

cōnātum, cōnāti, n. , attempt, endeavor, undertaking.	iūs iūrandum,¹ iūris iūrandī, n. , an oath.
conciliō, conciliāre, conciliāvi, conciliātus , win over, secure, procure.	ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f. , speech, words, argument.
dubius, dubia, dubium, adj. , doubtful, uncertain.	perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus , accomplish, finish, make, bring about.
fidēs, fideī, f. , faith, belief, faithfulness, pledge, protection.	(multum, plūs), plūrimum, adv. , very much.
firmus, firma, firmum, adj. , strong.	probō, probāre, probāvi, probātus , approve, prove, show.

IDIOMS

- perfacile factū**, very easy (to do).
plūrimum posse, be most powerful.
Galliaē potirī, get the mastery over Gaul.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) *Potior* with the Genitive. (2) Genitive of the Whole. (3) Ablative Absolute. (4) Ablative of Means. (5) Substantive *Quin*-Clause. (6) Indirect Discourse. (7) Infinitive as Subject. (8) Ablative of the Supine. (9) Future Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

A. (1) 357, *a*; (2) 346, 2; (3) 419; (4) 409; (5) 558, *a*; (6) 580, *a*; (7) 452; (8) 510; (9) 194, *a*.

B. (1) 212, 2; (2) 201; (3) 227; (4) 218; (5) 298; (6) 314, 2; (7) 327; (8) 340, 2; (9) 115.

¹ Sometimes written as one word, *iūsiūrandum*.

G. (1) 407, 2, *d*; (2) 369; (3) 409; (4) 401; (5) 555, 2; (6) 527; (7) 422; (8) 436; (9) 247.

HB. (1) 353; (2) 346; (3) 421; (4) 423; (5) 521, 3, *b*; (6) 534, 1; (7) 585; (8) 619; (9) 162.

H. (1) 477, I, 3; (2) 442; (3) 489; (4) 476; (5) 595, 1; (6) 642, 1; (7) 615; (8) 635; (9) 236.

TRANSLATE: Perfacile factū est cōnāta perficere. Tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possunt. Nōn est dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possint. Ego meis cōpiīs vōbīs rēgna conciliābō. Tōtīus Galliae potīrī possumus.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER III, LAST PART.

CHAPTER IV

VOCABULARY

cliēns, clientis, m., a dependent, vassal.

condūcō, condūcere, condūxī, conductus, bring together, collect, hire.

cōnsciscō, cōnsciscere, cōnscivī, cōnscitus, resolve, take upon one's self.

cremō, cremāre, cremāvī, cremātus, burn, consume.

damnō, damnāre, damnāvī, damnātus, find guilty, condemn.

dictiō, dictiōnis, f., a speaking, pleading.

ēnūntiō, ēnūntiāre, ēnūn-

tiāvī, ēnūntiātus, make known, report.

eōdem, adv., to the same place, to the same end.

ēripiō, ēripere, ēripiū, ēreptus, snatch away, take from, rescue.

exsequor, exsequī, exsecūtus, follow out, follow up.

familia, familiae, f., body of slaves or vassals, household, family.

incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātus, set in motion, impel, arouse.

indiciū, indicī, n., informa-

tion, evidence, an in- former.	poena, poenae, f. , penalty, punishment.
iūdicium, iūdicī, n. , judgment, trial, court of trial.	suspiciō, suspiciōnis, f. , sus- picion.
obaerātus, obaerāti, m. , a debtor.	

IDIOMS

- ad hominum milia decem**, about ten thousand men.
causae dictiō, trial (pleading of one's cause).
ex vinculis causam dicere, plead one's case in chains.
sē ēripere nē, save himself from (pleading).
iūs exsequī, enforce the law.
sibi mortem cōnsciscere, commit suicide.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Ablative of Accordance. (2) Volitive Substantive Clause explaining *Poenam*. (3) Substantive *Quīn*-Clause. (4) *Cum*-Clause of Situation. (5) Infinitive as Subject. (6) Conditional Participle.

A. (1) 418, *a*; (2) 561, *a*; (3) 558, *a*; (4) 546; (5) 454; (6) 496.

B. (1) 220, 3; (2) 294; (3) 298; (4) 288, 1, B; (5) 330; (6) 337, 2, *b*).

G. (1) 397; (2) 546, N. 2; (3) 555, 2; (4) 585; (5) 535; (6) 667.

HB. (1) 414; (2) 502, 3, *a*, N.; (3) 521, 3, *b*; (4) 524; (5) 585; (6) 604, 3.

H. (1) 475, 3; (2) 564, III; (3) 595, 1; (4) 600, II, 1; (5) 615; (6) 638, 2.

TRANSLATE: *Sī damnābitur, eum poena sequētur. (Eum) damnātum poena sequētur, ut ignī cremētur. Damnātum poenam sequī oportet. Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam coēgit; omnēs clientēs eodem condūxit. Ob eam rem civitās incitāta est. Civitās in-*

citāta armīs iūs suum exsequētur. Civitās iūs suum exsequi cōnābitur. Cum multitudinem hominum magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuū est. Ipse sibi mortem cōseīvit.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER IV.

CHAPTER V

VOCABULARY

- adsciscō, adsciscere, adscivī, adscitus, attach, receive, admit.**
- Boīi, Boiōrum, m.,** the Boii, *a Celtic tribe.*
- cibārius, cibāria, cibārium,** pertaining to food; **cibāria, cibāriōrum, n.,** provisions.
- combūrō, combūrere, combussī, combustus, tr.,** burn, burn up.
- efferrō, efferre, extulī, elātus,** carry out, publish, elate.
- exūrō, exūrere, exussī, exustus, tr.,** burn up, burn.
- Latobrigī, Latobrigōrum, m.,** *a tribe associated with the Helvetians.*
- molō, molere, moluī, molitus,** grind.
- nihilum, nihilī, n.,** nothing.
- Nōreia, Nōreiae, f.,** *a town of the Norici.*
- Nōricus, Nōrica, Nōricum,** Noric, of the Norici.
- oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātus,** attack, lay siege to.
- quadringenti, quadringentae, quadringenta,** four hundred.
- Rauracī, Rauracōrum, m.,** *a tribe near the Rhine.*
- reditiō, reditiōnis, f.,** a return, returning.
- subeō, subīre, subīī, subitūrus,** come under, come up, undergo.
- tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus,** lift up, take, take away, destroy; elate.
- Tulingī, Tulingōrum, m.,** *a German tribe.*
- ūnā, adv.,** together with, along with.
- utī, same as ut,** that, so that, in order that.

IDIOMS

ad duodecim, about twelve.

nihilō minus, nevertheless.

ad eam rem parātus, ready for this enterprise.

omne praeter quod, all except that which.

trium mēnsium molita cibāria, meal enough for three months.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Shortened Perfects. *Pugnārant* = *Pugnāverant*.

(2) Descriptive Genitive. (3) Dative with Compounds.

(4) Accusative of the Place Whither. (5) Ablative Absolute. (6) Ablative of the Measure of Difference. (7) Ablative of Respect. (8) Ablative of the Starting-point.

(9) Object of *Ūtor*, etc. (10) Purpose Clauses. (11) Volitive Substantive Clause. (12) Infinitive with *Iubeō*.

(13) Accusative of the Gerundive.

A. (1) 181, *a*; (2) 345, *b*; (3) 370; (4) 427, 2; (5) 419; (6) 414; (7) 418; (8) 427, 1; (9) 410; (10) 531; (11) 563; (12) 563, *a*; (13) 506.

B. (1) 116; (2) 203, 2; (3) 187, III; (4) 182, 1, *b*; (5) 227; (6) 223; (7) 226; (8) 229, 1, *b*; (9) 218, 1; (10) 282; (11) 295, 1; (12) 331, II; (13) 339, 2.

G. (1) 131, 1; (2) 365, 2; (3) 347; (4) 337; (5) 410; (6) 403; (7) 397; (8) 390, 2; (9) 407; (10) 545; (11) 546; (12) 423, 6; (13) 432.

HB. (1) 163; (2) 355; (3) 376; (4) 385, *b*; (5) 421; (6) 424; (7) 441; (8) 451, *a*; (9) 429; (10) 502, 2; (11) 502, 3; (12) 587; (13) 612, III.

H. (1) 238; (2) 440, 3; (3) 429; (4) 419, 1; (5) 489; (6) 479; (7) 480; (8) 462, 4; (9) 477; (10) 568; (11) 565; (12) 614; (13) 628.

TRANSLATE: *Helvētiī ut ē finibus suis exīrent cōstituerant; id facere cōnantur. Ad eam rem parātī sunt.*

Sēsē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt. Helvētīi vicōs et reliqua aedificia incendunt. Frūmentum sēcum portātūrī erant. Domum reditiōnis spem tollent. Omnia perīcula subībunt. Parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda erunt. Trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quisque efferat. Rauracī, fīnitimī Helvētiōrum, eōdem cōnsiliō ūtentur. Eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō cum Helvētiis proficiēcantur. Helvētīi persuādent Tulingīs utī ūnā cum iīs proficiēcantur. Boiōs ad sē recēpērunt.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER V.

CHAPTER VI

VOCABULARY

Allobrogēs, Allobrogum, Acc.,

Allobrogas, m., a Gallic tribe near Lake Geneva; conquered by the Romans in 121 B.C. Later revolted; finally subdued in 61 B.C.

Aprīlis, Aprīle, adj., of April.

A. Gabīnius, A. Gabinī, m.,
Aulus Gabinius, consul in 58 B.C.

conveniō, convenīre, convēnī,
conventus, come together, assemble, meet.

difficilis, difficile, adj., not easy, difficult, hard.

existimō, existimāre, existi-
māvī, existimātus, judge, think, believe.

expeditus, expedita, expedit-
tum, adj., unencumbered, easy, light-armed (troops).

fluō, fluere, flūxī, flow.

Genāva, Genāvae, f., a city of the Allōbroges, now Geneva.

impendeō, impendēre, overhang.

Kalendae, Kalendārum, f.,
the Calends, the first day of the Roman month.

multō, adv., much.

nōndum, adv., not yet.

nūper, adv., lately, recently.

perpaucī, perpaucae, per-
pauca, adj., very few.

quā, relative adv., where, by which way.

quīntus, quīnta, quīntum
fifth.

singulī, singulae, singula, one at a time, one by one.

vadum, vadī, n., a ford, a shallow place, shoal.

IDIOMS

nōn nūllī, some.

bonō animō in, well disposed towards.

diem dicunt, they appoint a day.

a. d. V. Kal. Apr. (**ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs**), the fifth day before the Calends of April, March 28.

L. Pisōne A. Gabiniō cōsulibus, in (the year of) the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius, 58 B.C.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) The Relative as Adjective. (2) Partitive Apposition. (3) Dative with *Proximus*. (4) Ablative of Place. (5) Descriptive Ablative. (6) Place Whence. (7) Descriptive Clauses. (8) Volitive Subjunctive in a Relative Clause. (9) Volitive Substantive Clause. (10) Result Clause. (11) Mood in Subordinate Clause of Indirect Discourse. (12) Object Infinitive. (13) Dates.

A. (1) 307, *b*; (2) 282, *a*; (3) 432, *a*, N.; (4) 429; (5) 415; (6) 427, 1; (7) 535; (8) 531, 2; (9) 563; (10) 537; (11) 580; (12) 563, *c*; (13) 631.

B. (1) 251, 3; (2) 169, 5; (3) 192, 1; (4) 228, 1, *b*; (5) 224, 1; (6) 229, 1, *b*; (7) 283; (8) 282, 2; (9) 295; (10) 284; (11) 314; (12) 331, III; (13) 371.

G. (1) 616; (2) 323; (3) 359; (4) 385, N. 1; (5) 400; (6) 390, 2; (7) 631, 2; (8) 630; (9) 546; 553, 2; (10) 552, 1; (11) 650; (12) 527; (13) p. 491.

HB. (1) 284, 4; (2) 319, I, *a*; (3) 362, III; (4) 436; (5) 443; (6) 451; (7) 521, 1; 517, 2; (8) 502, 1; (9) 502, 3; (10) 521, 2; (11) 534, 2; 535, 2; (12) 587; (13) 661; 664; 665.

H. (1) 399; (2) 393, 4; (3) 434; (4) 485, 2; (5) 473, 2; (6) 491, II, 2; (7) 591, 5; (8) 590; (9) 565; (10) 570; (11) 643; (12) 613; (13) 754.

TRANSLATE: Erant duo itinera; ūnum iter per Sēquanōs erat, alterum per prōvinciam nostram erat. Iter

per prōvinciam multō facilius fuit. Allobrogēs nūper pācātī erant; nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum erant. Nōndum bonō animō in pōpulum Rōmānum (esse) vidēbantur. Rhodanus nōn nullīs locīs trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est Genāva. Allobrogibus Helvētīī persuādēbunt ut per suōs finēs eōs ire patiantur. Helvētīī Allobrogas vī cōgent ut per finēs suōs eōs ire patiantur. Quādam diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER VI.

CHAPTER VII, FIRST PART

VOCABULARY

certus, certa, certum, sure,
certain, trustworthy.

imperō, imperāre, imperāvī,
imperātus, command; levy
(soldiers).

licet, licēre, licuit, *impersonal*
verb, it is allowed, it is per-
mitted.

maleficium, malefici, n.,
harm, mischief.

mātūrō, mātūrāre, mātūrāvī,
mātūrātus, hasten, make
haste.

Nammeius, Nammeī, m., a
Helvetian.

pervenio, pervenire, pervēnī,
perventūrus, arrive at,
reach, come to.

princeps, Gen., principis, adj.,
first, chief, foremost.

rescindō, rescindere, rescidī,
rescissus, cut away, destroy.

ulterior, ulterius, adj., farther.

Verucloetius, Verucloetī, m.,
a Helvetian.

voluntās, voluntātis, f., will,
good-will, consent.

IDIOMS

quam maximis (potest) itineribus, by forced marches.

prōvinciae militēs imperāre, levy on the province for soldiers

eum certiōrem facit, he informs him (makes him more certain)

is certior fit, he is informed.

iis est in animō, they have it in mind, they intend.

eius voluntāte, with his approval.

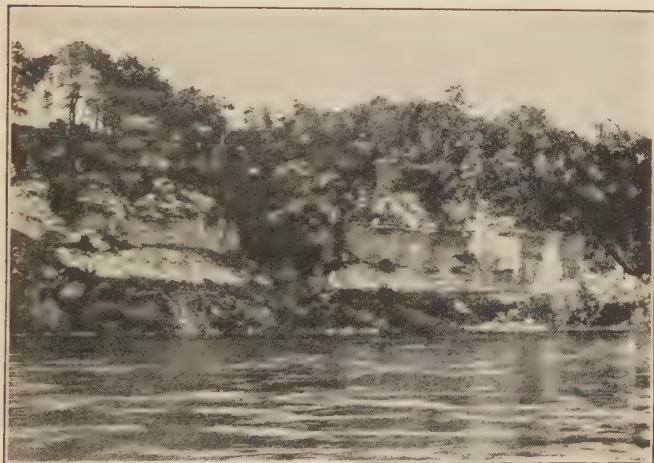
SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) *Quam* with Superlative. (2) Ablative of Attendant Circumstances. (3) Relative Clause of Purpose.

(4) *Cum*-Clause of Situation. (5) Infinitive as Subject.

(6) Infinitive as Appositive. (7) Indirect Discourse.

(8) Substantive Clause of Request.



THE RHONE NEAR GENEVA

A. (1) 291, c; (2) 418. a; (3) 531, 2; (4) 546; (5) 452, 1; (6) 452, 2; (7) 580; (8) 563.

B. (1) 240, 3; (2) 220, 2; (3) 282, 2; (4) 288, 1, B; (5) 327, 1; (6) 169, 1; (7) 314, 1; (8) 295, 1.

G. (1) 303, R.; (2) 399, N. 1; (3) 630; (4) 585; (5) 422; (6) 419; (7) 648 ff.; (8) 546.

HB. (1) 241, 4; (2) 422, I. a; (3) 502, 2; (4) 524; (5) 585; (6) 597, 1, b; (7) 534; (8) 530, 2.

H. (1) 159, 2; (2) 473, 3; (3) 590; (4) 600, II; (5) 615; (6) 616, 2; (7) 642; (8) 565.

TRANSLATE: *Helvētīi per prōvinciam iter facere cōnantur. Prōvinciae maximum militum numerum imperat. Dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt. Nōbīs est in animō iter per prōvinciam facere. Rogāmus ut tuā voluntāte id nōbīs facere liceat.*

TRANSLATE CHAPTER VII as far as *liceat*.

CHAPTER VII, LAST PART

VOCABULARY -

dēlibērō, dēlibērāre. *dēlibērāvī, dēlibērātus*, deliberate, consider.

dum, conj., while, so long as, until.

facultās, facultātis, f., power, opportunity; *pl.*, means, resources.

Īdūs, Īduum, f., the Ides, *13th or 15th of the month.*

↘ **intercēdō, intercēdere, intercessī, intercessūrus**, go between, intervene, exist between.

iugum, iugī, n., a yoke, ridge, crest.

L. Cassius, L. Cassī, m., Lucius Cassius, *consul in 107 B.C.*

memoria, memoriae, f., memory.

revertor, revertī (perf., revertī), reversus, return, come back.

spatium, spatī, n., space, distance; space of time.

sub, prep. with accus. or abl., under, towards (*acc.*); under, at the foot of (*abl.*).

sūmō. sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmp-tus, take.

temperō, temperāre, temperāvī, temperātus, control, control one's self, refrain.

IDIOMS

ad Īdūs Aprilēs, about the Ides of April.

memoriā tenēre, hold in memory, remember.

sub iugum mittere, send under the yoke (*a humiliation inflicted on vanquished soldiers*).

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) *Faciundī* = *Faciendī*. (2) Descriptive Ablative.
 (3) Conditional Ablative Absolute. (4) Subjunctive
Dum-Clause of an Anticipated Act. (5) Subjunctive in
 Indirect Command. (6) Gerund. 17213C

A. (1) p. 89, footnote 1; (2) 415; (3) 420, 4; (4) 553;
 (5) 588; (6) 506.

B. (1) 116, 2; (2) 224; (3) 227, 2, b; (4) 293, III, 2;
 (5) 316; (6) 338, 3.

G. (1) 130, 8; (2) 400; (3) 409; 667; (4) 572; (5) 652;
 (6) 432.

HB. (1) 164, 2; (2) 443; (3) 421, 6; (4) 507, 5; (5) 538;
 (6) 612, III.

H. (1) 243; (2) 473, 2; (3) 489, 1; (4) 603, II, 2; (5) 642;
 (6) 628.

TRANSLATE: Caesar memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cō-
 sulem occīsum (esse). Caesar memoriā tenēbat exercitum
 Cassī sub iugum missum esse. Concēdendum nōn est.
 Concēdendum nōn (esse) putābat; neque hominēs ini-
 mīcō animō temperābunt ab iniūriā. Datā facultāte per
 prōvinciam itineris faciundī, nōn temperābunt ab male-
 ficiō. Diem ego ad dēliberandum sūmam. Sī quid vultis,
 ad Īdūs Aprilēs revertiminī.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER VII, LAST PART.

CHAPTER VIII, FIRST PART

VOCABULARY

altitūdō , altitūdinis , <i>f.</i> , height, depth.	intereā , <i>adv.</i> , meanwhile, in the meantime.
castellum , castelli , <i>n.</i> , fort, redoubt, stronghold.	invītus , invīta , invītum , <i>adj.</i> , unwilling.
commūniō , commūnīre , commūnīvi , commūnitus , fortify.	perducō , perducere , perdūxi , perductus , bring, conduct, prolong.
dispōnō , dispōnere , disposui , dispositus , place here and there, distribute, station.	quō , <i>with subjunctive</i> , in order that.
inflūō , influere , inflūxi , inflūxurus , flow into.	ūndēvīgintī , nineteen.

IDIOMS

- mīlia passuum**, miles.
mūrum perdūcere, construct a wall.
sē invītō, (he being unwilling) without his consent, against his will.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Descriptive Genitive. (2) Accusative of Extent. (3) Ablative Absolute. (4) Ablative of Means. (5) Purpose Clause with *Quō*.

A. (1) 345; (2) 425; (3) 419; (4) 409; (5) 531, 2, *a*.

B. (1) 203, 2; (2) 181; (3) 227; (4) 218, 10; (5) 282, 1, *a*.

G. (1) 365, 2; (2) 335; (3) 409 *f.*; (4) 401; (5) 545, 2.

HB. (1) 355; (2) 387, 1; (3) 421; (4) 423, *a*; (5) 502, 2, *b*.

H. (1) 440, 3; (2) 417; (3) 489; (4) 476; (5) 568, 7.

TRANSLATE: Militibus ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Iūram mūrum perdūcit. Mīlia passuum ūndēvīgintī fos-

sam perdūcit. Mūrus est in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim.
Sī Caesare invītō trānsīre cōnentur, prohibēre possit.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER VIII as far as *posset*.

CHAPTER VIII, LAST PART

VOCABULARY

complūrēs, complūra and complūria , many, several.	mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis , <i>f.</i> , forti- fication.
cōnātus, cōnātūs , <i>m.</i> , an at- tempt.	negō, negāre, negāvī, negā- tus , say no, say . . : not, deny.
concursum, concursūs , <i>m.</i> , a running together, onset, charge.	noctū , <i>old abl. used as adv.</i> , by night.
dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dē- iectus , cast down, drive off, destroy.	numquam , <i>adv.</i> , never.
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dē- stitūrus , cease, desist.	ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus , show, point out, declare.
exemplum, exemplī , <i>n.</i> , ex- ample, practice, precedent.	perrumpō, perrumpere, per- rūpī, perruptus , break through.
interdiū , <i>adv.</i> , by day.	ratis, ratis , <i>f.</i> , raft.
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnc- tus , join.	repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus , drive back, re- pulse, repel.
(parvus, minor), minimus, minima, minimum , least.	

IDIOMS

nāvēs iūctae, a pontoon bridge, a bridge of boats joined to-
gether.

negat sē posse, he says that he cannot.

nōn numquam, sometimes.

operis mūnitiō, the construction of the works, fortifications.

vim facere, use force, force a way through.

cōnantur sī, they try to see if.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Subjective Genitive. (2) Ablative of Separation.
 (3) Ablative of Accordance. (4) *Sī* introducing Indirect Question. (5) Infinitive as Object.

A. (1) 343, N. 1; (2) 400; (3) 418, *a*; (4) 576, *a*; (5) 459.

B. (1) 199; (2) 214; (3) 220, 3; (4) 300, 3; (5) 331.

G. (1) 363, 1; (2) 390, 2; (3) 397; (4) 460, *b*; (5) 527; 530.

HB. (1) 344; (2) 408, 2; (3) 414; (4) 582, 2. *b*; (5) 589.

H. (1) 440, 1; (2) 462, 1; (3) 475, 3; (4) 649, II, 3; (5) 613.

TRANSLATE: Diem cōstituerat cum lēgātis. Ego mōre populī Rōmānī nōn possum iter ullī per prōvinciam dare. Sī vim facere cōnābiminī, prohibebō. Helvētīi nāvēs iūnxērunt; aliī vadīs Rhodanī trānsīre cōnātī sunt. Sī perrumpere possent cōnātī sunt.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER VIII, LAST PART.

CHAPTER IX

VOCABULARY

angustiae, angustiarum, f., narrowness, narrow pass, difficulties.

beneficium, benefici, n., service, favor, kindness.

dēprecātor, dēprecātōris, m., mediator, intercessor.

grātia, grātia, f., gratitude, good-will, influence.

impetrō. impetrāre. impetrāvī. impetrātus, obtain a request, secure.

itaque, adv., and so, accordingly.

largitiō. largitiōnis, f., generosity, bribing.

obstringō. obstringere. obstrinxī, obstrictus, bind.

propter, *adv. and prep. with accus.*, near by; on account of.

tarily, by one's own influence.

Gen., spontis, *Abl.*, sponte, *f.*,
of one's own accord, volun-

studeō, studēre, studuī, be
eager for, be devoted to.

IDIOMS

Sēquanīs invitīs, without consent of the Sequani, if the Sequani should be unwilling.

eō dēprecātōre, (he being intercessor) by his intercession.

in mātirimōnium dūcere, marry (*said of the man*); cf. nūbō.

novae rēs, new conditions, a revolution.

habēre obstrictās, keep under obligations.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Objective Genitive. (2) Dative with *Amicus*.
(3) Dative with *Studeō*. (4) Accusative of Degree.
(5) Ablative of Manner. (6) Conditional Ablative
Absolute. (7) Ablative of Cause. (8) Ablative of
Separation. (9) *Ut*-Clause of Purpose. (10) Sub-
stantive *Ut*-Clause. (11) Causal *Cum*-Clause. (12) *Habēre*
with Participles. (13) Infinitive with *Patiōr*.

A. (1) 348; (2) 383; (3) 367; (4) 390, *c*; (5) 412, *b*; (6) 420, 4; (7) 404; (8) 401; (9) 531, 1; (10) 568; (11) 549; (12) 497, *b*; (13) 563, *c*.

B. (1) 200; (2) 192, 1; (3) 187, II, *a*; (4) 176, 3, *a*;
(5) 220, 3; (6) 227, 2, *b*); (7) 219; (8) 214, 2; (9) 282, 1;
(10) 295, 2; (11) 286, 2; (12) 337, 7; (13) 331, III.

G. (1) 363, 2; (2) 359; (3) 346; (4) 334; (5) 399, N. 1; (6) 409; (7) 408, 2; (8) 390, 2; (9) 545; (10) 553, 1; (11) 586; (12) 238; (13) 553, 2, N.

HB. (1) 354; (2) 362; (3) 362; (4) 387, III; (5) 445, 1; (6) 421, 6; (7) 444; (8) 408, 2; (9) 502, 2; (10) 531, 2; (11) 525; (12) 605, 5; (13) 587.

Н. (1) 440, 2; (2) 434; (3) 426; (4) 416, 2; (5) 473, 3;

(6) 489, 1; (7) 475; (8) 462; (9) 568; (10) 566; (11) 598;
(12) 640, 2; (13) 614.

TRANSLATE: Est ūna per Sēquanōs via. Sēquanīs suā sponte persuādere nōn poterant. Dumnorīge dēpre-cātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrābunt. Dumnorīx largitōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat. Dumnorīx Helvētiīs erat amīcus. Dumnorīx plūrimās cīvitatēs suō beneficiō habuit obstrictās. Quam plūrimās cīvitatēs habere obstrictās volēbat. Helvētīi et Sēquanī obsidēs inter sē dabunt. Dumnorīx utī obsidēs inter sē dent perficit. Sēquanī (obsidēs dant) nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER IX.

CHAPTER X

VOCABULARY

Aquileia, Aquileiae, f., Aquileia, a city of Cisalpine Gaul on the Adriatic Sea.

bellicōsus, bellicōsa, bellicōsum, warlike.

Caturigēs, Caturigum, m., an Alpine tribe of Gauls.

Ceutronēs, Ceutronum, m., an Alpine tribe of Gauls.

circum, adv. and prep. with accus., around, about.

citerior, citerius, comp. adj., nearer, hither; used of the Gallic province nearer Rome, Cisalpine Gaul.

cōnscribō, cōnscribere, cōn-

scripsī, cōnscriptus, enroll, enlist.

extrā, adv. and prep. with accus., outside of, beyond.

frūmentārius, frūmentāria, frūmentārium, pertaining to grain, productive of grain.

Graiocelī, Graiocelōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Alps.

hibernus, hiberna, hibernum, adj., of winter; **hiberna, hibernōrum, n.,** winter quarters.

hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātūrus, pass the winter, winter.

maximē, *adv.*, especially, very.
Ocelum, **Oceli**, *n.*, a town of the Graioceli on the western border of the province of Cisalpine Gaul.

præficiō, **præficere**, **præfēcī**, **præfectus**, place at the head, put in command.

Santonēs, **Santonum**, *Acc.*, **Santonōs**, a tribe of western Gaul north of the Garumna.

Segusiāvī, **Segusiāvōrum**, *m.*, a tribe of central Gaul.

septimus, **septima**, **septimum**, seventh.

superior, **superius**, *comp. adj.*, higher, earlier, stronger.

Tolōsātēs, **Tolōsātium**, *m.*, the inhabitants of Tolosa.

Vocontii, **Vocontiōrum**, *m.*, a Gallic tribe south of the Allobroges.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Dative of the Possessor. (2) Dative with *Finitivus*. (3) Dative with Compound Verbs. (4) Ablative of Manner. (5) Ablative Absolute. (6) Ablative of Separation. (7) Ablative of Time. (8) Substantive *Ut*-Clause of Result or Actuality. (9) Infinitive as Subject. (10) Infinitive as Complement. (11) Infinitive as Object.

A. (1) 373; (2) 384; (3) 370; (4) 412; (5) 419; (6) 401; (7) 423; (8) 569, *a*; (9) 452; (10) 456; (11) 459.

B. (1) 190; (2) 192. 1; (3) 187, III, 2; (4) 220, 1; (5) 227; (6) 214, 2; (7) 230; (8) 297, 2; (9) 327; 330; (10) 328; (11) 331, 1.

G. (1) 349; (2) 359; (3) 347; (4) 399; (5) 409; (6) 390, 2; (7) 393; (8) 553, 3; (9) 535; (10) 423; (11) 527.

HB. (1) 374; (2) 362, III; (3) 376, *a*; (4) 445; (5) 421; (6) 408, 2; (7) 439; (8) 521, 3; (9) 585; (10) 586; (11) 589.

H. (1) 430; (2) 434; (3) 429, 1; (4) 473, 3; (5) 489; (6) 462; (7) 486; (8) 571, 1; (9) 615; (10) 607; (11) 613.

TRANSLATE: *Helvētiīs est in animō iter facere. Nūntiātūr Helvētiīs esse in animō iter facere. Id sī fiet,*

prōvincia hominēs bellicōsōs locīs patentibus fīnitimōs habēbit. Magnō cum periculō prōvinciae erit ut populī Rōmānī inimicōs locīs patentibus fīnitimōs habeat. Mūnitiōnī Labiēnum praefficīt. Trēs (legiōnēs) ex hibernīs ēdūcit. Proximum iter in Galliam per Alpēs erat. Ceutronēs loca superiōra occupāvērunt. Complūribus hī proeliīs pulsī sunt. Ocelum est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER X.

CHAPTER XI

VOCABULARY

abdūcō, abdūcere, abdūxī, abductus, lead away, take away.

Ambarrī, Ambarrōrum, m., a tribe of Gauls, related to the Haeduan.

cōnsanguineus, cōnsanguinea, cōnsanguineum, akin; as noun, kinsman.

cōnspectus, cōnspectūs, m., sight.

cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmsī, cōnsūmptus, waste, consume, destroy.

dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus, owe, ought, must.

dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātus, point out, show, state, make known.

dēpopulor, dēpopulārī, dēpopulātus, ravage, lay waste.

expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, expugnātus, take by storm, capture.

exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātus, look out for, wait, wait to see.

ita, adv., so, in such a way, thus.

mereor, merērī, meritus, win, earn, deserve, serve.

necessārius, necessāria, necessārium, necessary, critical, pressing; **necessārius, necessārī, m.,** a relative, kinsman, close friend.

populor, populārī, populātus, ravage, devastate.

possessio, possēsiōnis, f., possession.

servitūs. servitūtis, f. , slavery, servitude.	tūtus , set up, think, decide, pass judgment.
solum, soli, n. , soil, ground, bottom.	vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vās- tātus , ravage, devastate.
statuō, statuere, statui, sta-	

IDIOMS

dē populō Rōmānō merērī, serve the interests of the Roman people.

Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, they inform Caesar.

fugā sē ad Caesarem recipere, flee to Caesar.

nihil est reliquī, nothing is left.

abdūci nōn dēbuērunt, they ought not to have been led away.

mihi nōn est exspectandum, I must not wait.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Apposition. (2) Subjective Genitive. (3) Partitive Genitive with *Nihil*. (4) Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. (5) Dative of Agent. (6) Dative of the Possessor. (7) Ablative of Cause. (8) *Dum*-Clause of an Anticipated Act. (9) Result Clause. (10) *Cum*-Clause of Situation and Cause. (11) Complementary Infinitive. (12) Indirect Discourse depending on a Verb of Saying merely implied in the Context. (13) Supine. (14) Passive Meaning of a Participle from a Deponent Verb.

A. (1) 281; 282; (2) 343; (3) 346, 1; (4) 194, b; (5) 374; (6) 373; (7) 404; (8) 553; (9) 537; (10) 549, N. 2; (11) 456; (12) 580, a; (13) 509; (14) 190, b.

B. (1) 169; (2) 199; (3) 201, 2, a; (4) 337, 8, b, 1; (5) 189, 1; (6) 190; (7) 219; (8) 293, III, 2; (9) 284; (10) 286, 2; (11) 328, 1; (12) 314, 2; (13) 340, 1, a; (14) 112, b.

G. (1) 320 f.; (2) 363, 1; (3) 369; (4) 251; (5) 355; (6) 349;

(7) 408, 2; (8) 572; (9) 552; (10) 585 f.; (11) 423; (12) 649 N. 2; (13) 435; (14) 167, N. 2.

HB. (1) 317, 2; (2) 344; (3) 346, *a*; (4) 600, 3; 162; (5) 373, 1; (6) 374; (7) 444; (8) 507, 5; (9) 521, 2; (10) 525; (11) 586; (12) 534, 1, *a*; (13) 618; (14) 291, *d*.

H. (1) 393; (2) 440, 1; (3) 440, 5; (4) 237; 531; (5) 431; (6) 430; (7) 475; (8) 603, II, 2; (9) 570; (10) 598; 600, II, 1; (11) 607; (12) 642, 1; (13) 633; (14) 222, 2.

TRANSLATE: Agrī Haeduōrum vāstārī nōn dēbuērunt. Līberī in servitūtem abdūcī nōn dēbuērunt. Oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuērunt. Ita nōs dē populō Rōmānō meritī sumus ut agrī vāstārī nōn dēbuerint. Ambarrī nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibent. Ambarrī Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Nōbīs praeter agrī solum nihil est reliquī. Nōn expectandum est mihi dum Helvētīi in Santonōs perveniant. Caesar nōn expectandum (esse) sibi statuit.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XI.

CHAPTER XII, FIRST PART

VOCABULARY

abdō , abdere , abdidī , abditus , put away, remove, hide.	concīdō , concidere , concīdī , concisus , cut up, cut down, kill.
adgredior , adgredī , adgressus , go towards, march against, attack.	explōrātor , explōrātōris , <i>m.</i> , a scout.
Arar , Araris , <i>m.</i> , the Arar, a river flowing into the Rhone at Lyons; modern Saône.	impediō , impedire , impedivī and impediī , impeditus , entangle, hinder, impede.
citrā , <i>adv. and prep. with accus.</i> , this side, on this side of.	incrēdibilis , incrēdibile , <i>adj.</i> , incredible, marvelous.

inopināns, *Gen.*, **inopinantis**,
adj., not suspecting, off one's
guard, unaware.

lēnitās, **lēnitātis**, *f.*, gentle-
ness, smoothness.

linter, **lintris** (*Gen. pl.*, **lin-
trium**), *f.*, skiff, boat.

mandō, **mandāre**, **mandāvī**,

mandātus, intrust, commit,
order.

oculus, **oculi**, *m.*, an eye.

vigilia, **vigiliae**, *f.*, a watch
*The Romans divided the night
into four watches from sunset
to sunrise.*



THE ARAR AT TREVoux
Near here the Helvetians crossed.

IDIOMS

certior factus est, he was informed.

trēs partēs, three-fourths.

dē tertiā vigiliā, soon after midnight.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Accusative with Verbs compounded with *Trāns*-.
(2) Ablative of Description. (3) Result Clauses. (4) In-

direct Questions. (5) Contracted Perfects. *Mandūrunt* = *Mandāvērunt*.

A. (1) 388, *b*; 395; (2) 415; (3) 537; (4) 574; (5) 181.

B. (1) 179, 1; (2) 224; (3) 284; (4) 300, 1; (5) 116, 1.

G. (1) 331; (2) 400; (3) 552; (4) 467; (5) 131, 1.

HB. (1) 386; (2) 443; (3) 521, 2; (4) 534, 2, III; (5) 163.

H. (1) 406; 413; (2) 473, 2; (3) 570; (4) 649, II; (5) 238.

TRANSLATE: In utram partem (*direction*) fluit Arar? In utram partem fluat iudicārī nōn potest. Trēs iam partēs Helvētiī id flūmen trādūxērunt; quārta ferē pars citrā flūmen reliqua est. Dē tertiā vigiliā ē castrīs profectus est.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XII as far as *abdidērunt*.

CHAPTER XII, LAST PART

VOCABULARY

calamitās, calamitātis, <i>f.</i> disaster, misfortune.	<i>adj.</i> , of the people, of the state, public.
cāsus, cāsūs, <i>m.</i> accident, chance.	sive, <i>conj.</i> , or if; sive . . . sive, correlatives, either . . . or.
immortālis, immortalē, <i>adj.</i> immortal.	socer, socerī, <i>m.</i> a father-in-law.
insignis, insigne, <i>adj.</i> marked, notable, signal.	solum, <i>adv.</i> alone, only.
pāgus, pāgī, <i>m.</i> a district, canton.	Tigurinus, Tigurina, Tigurinum, <i>adj.</i> of the Tigurini, one of the four cantons of the Helvetians.
persolvō, persolvere, persolvī, persolūtus, pay, suffer (<i>a penalty</i>).	ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus, punish, avenge.
pūblicus, pūblica, pūblicum,	

IDIOM

ea **prīnceps** **poenās** **persolvit**, that was the first to pay the penalty.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Dative with Compound Verbs. (2) Ablative of Manner. (3) Ablative of the Place Whence. (4) Idiomatic Use of Adjectives. (5) Incorporation of Antecedent in Relative Clause.

A. (1) 370 ; (2) 412 ; (3) 427, 1 ; (4) 290 ; (5) 307, *b*, **N.**

B. (1) 187, **III** ; (2) 220, 3 ; (3) 229, 1, *b* ; (4) 241, 2 ; (5) 251, 4, *a*.

G. (1) 347 ; (2) 399, **N. 1** ; (3) 390, 2 ; (4) 325, 6 ; (5) 616.

HB. (1) 376 ; (2) 445 ; (3) 451, *a* ; (4) 243 ; (5) 284, 6.

H. (1) 429 ; (2) 473, 3 ; (3) 462, 4 ; (4) 497, 3 ; (5) 399, 3.

TRANSLATE: *Ea* *pars*, *quae calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat*, *prīnceps poenās persolvit*. *Quae pars calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat*, *ea (pars) poenās persolvit*. *Pisōnem Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium (interfēcērunt) interfēcērant*.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XII, LAST PART.

CHAPTER XIII, FIRST PART

VOCABULARY

aegrē (**aegrius**, **aegerrimē**), *adv.*, feebly, with difficulty, hardly.

Cassiānus, **Cassiāna**, **Cassiānum**, *adj.*, of Cassius, with Cassius.

commoveō, **commovēre**, **commōvī**, **commōtus**, move, stir, disturb, alarm.

cōnsequor, **cōnsequī**, **cōnsecūtus**, follow, overtake, secure.

cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātus, take care, provide for, cause.	sevērāvī, perseverātūrus, persist.
Divicō, Divicōnis, m., a Hel- <i>vetian leader.</i>	prīstinus, prīstina, prīsti- num, old, former.
incommodum, incommodī, <i>n., disadvantage, misfortune,</i> defeat, disaster.	reminīscor, reminīscī, re- member.
persequor, persequī, perse- cūtus, follow up, pursue, at-	repentīnus, repentina, repen- tinum, sudden, hasty.
tack.	sin, conj., but if.
persevērō, persevērāre, per-	vetus, Gen., veteris,¹ adj., old, former.

IDIOMS

hōc proeliō factō, after this battle.

pontem faciendum cūrat. he has a bridge made.

cum aliquō agere, treat with some one, plead with some one.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Ablative of Cause. (2) Ablative of Time. (3) Genitive with Verbs of Remembering. (4) *U*-Clause of Purpose. (5) Substantive *U*-Clause of Actuality. (6) *Cum*-Clause of Situation and Cause. (7) Causal Participle. (8) Gerundive. (9) Statements and Commands in Indirect Discourse. (10) Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse. (11) Future Perfect changed to Pluperfect Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

A. (1) 404; (2) 423; (3) 350; (4) 531; (5) 570; (6) 549, N. 2; (7) 496; (8) 500, 4; (9) 580; 588; (10) 580; (11) 484, c.

B. (1) 219; (2) 230, 2; 231; (3) 206, 2; (4) 282, 1; (5) 297, 3; (6) 288, I, B; (7) 337, 2, f; (8) 337, 8, b, 2; (9) 331, 1; 316; (10) 314, 1; (11) 319, a.

¹ *Vetus* is one of the few adjectives of the third declension which have a consonant stem throughout; Nom.-Acc. Neut. Pl., *vetera*; Abl. Sing., *vetere*; Gen. Pl., *veterum*.

G. (1) 408; (2) 393; (3) 376; (4) 545; (5) 557; (6) 586; (7) 666; (8) 430; (9) 650; 652; (10) 650; (11) 510.

HB. (1) 444; (2) 439; (3) 350; (4) 502, 2; (5) 521, 3, N.; (6) 525; (7) 604, 2; (8) 612, III; (9) 589; 533; 534; 538; (10) 534, 2; (11) p. 244, footnote.

H. (1) 475; (2) 486; (3) 454; (4) 568; (5) 571, 4; (6) 600, II, 1; (7) 638, 1; (8) 622; (9) 642; (10) 643; (11) 644, 2.

TRANSLATE: Id (ut flūmen trānsīret) Caesar ūnō diē fēcerat. Id illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegēbant. Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ibunt Helvētīi ubi tū, Caesar, eōs esse volueris. Sīn bellō persequī persevērābis, reminiscere prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XIII as far as *virtūtis Helvētiōrum*.

CHAPTER XIII, LAST PART

VOCABULARY

adorior, adoriri, adortus, attack, assail.

committō, committere, commisi, commissus, join, trust, allow, commit.

dēspiciō, dēspicere, dēspexi, dēspectus, look down upon, despise.

discō, discere, didici, learn.

dolus, dolī, m., deceit, tricks, stratagem.

imprōvisō, adv., unexpectedly.

interneciō, interneciōnis, f.,

extermination, annihilation.

magis, adv., more, rather.

maiōrēs, maiōrum, m., ancestors.

nītor, nīti, nīsus or nīxus, struggle, strive, exert one's self.

prōdō, prōdere, prōdidi, prōditus, give up, betray, hand down, transmit.

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus, grant, render, attribute, ascribe.

IDIOMS

nē suae magnopere virtūtī tribuat, let him not give his own valor too much credit.

insidiis nitī, rely on ambush.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Ablative of Means. (2) Ablative with *Nitor*. (3) Result Clauses. (4) Substantive Clause of Consent or Acquiescence. (5) *Quod*-Clause of Respect. (6) Prohibitions in Direct and Indirect Discourse. (7) Subordinate Clause in Indirect Discourse. (8) Future Perfect in Indirect Discourse.

A. (1) 409; (2) 431; (3) 537; (4) 563; (5) 572. *a*; (6) 450; 588, N. 2; (7) 580; (8) 484, *c*.

B. (1) 218; (2) 218, 3; (3) 284; (4) 295, 2; (5) 299, 2; (6) 276, *c*; 316; (7) 314, 1; (8) 319, B, *a*.

G. (1) 401; (2) 401, R. 6; (3) 552; (4) 553, 2; (5) 525, 2; (6) 271, 2; 652; (7) 650; 654; (8) 510.

HB. (1) 423; (2) 438, 1; (3) 521, 2; (4) 531, 2; (5) 552, 2; (6) 501, 3, *a*, 2; 534, 2; 538; (7) 534, 2; (8) p. 244, footnote.

H. (1) 476; (2) 476, 3; (3) 570; (4) 565; (5) 588, 3, N.; (6) 561; 642, 4; (7) 643; (8) 644, 2.

TRANSLATE: *Quod improvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus es, nōlī ob eam rem nōs ipsōs dēspicere. Iī quī flūmen trānsierant suīs auxiliū ferre nōn poterant. Quod ūnum pāgum adortus es cum iī suīs auxiliū ferre nōn possent, nōlī ob eam rem tuae magnopere virtūtī tribuere. Nōs ita ā maiōribus nostrīs didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō nitāmur. Nōlī committere ut is locus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī nōmen capiat.*

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XIII, LAST PART.

CHAPTER XIV, FIRST PART

VOCABULARY

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, be on one's guard, guard against.	dēcipiō, dēcipere, dēcēpī, dē- ceptus, deceive.
commemorō, commemorāre, commemorāvī, commemo- rātus, mention.	dubitātiō, dubitātiōnis, f., doubt, hesitation.
cōnsciūs, cōnscia, cōnscium, knowing, conscious, aware of.	meritum, meritī, n., desert, service.

IDIOMS

minus dubitātiōnis, less hesitation.

gravius ferre, be more indignant.

eō gravius ferō quō, I am as much the more indignant as.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Forward-moving Use of the Relative. (2) Partitive Genitive with *Minus*. (3) Objective Genitive with *Cōnsciūs*. (4) Dative with *Cōnsciūs*. (5) Ablative of the Measure of Difference. (6) Ablative of Manner. (7) Ablative of Cause. (8) Clause introduced by *Quārē*. (9) Indirect Discourse. (10) Condition Contrary to Fact.

A. (1) 308, *f*; (2) 346, 3; (3) 349, *a*; (4) 383; (5) 414; (6) 412; (7) 404; (8) 535, *a*; (9) 580; 584; 585; 589; (10) 517.

B. (1) 251, 6; (2) 201, 2; (3) 204, 1; (4) 192; (5) 223; (6) 220, 3; (7) 219; (8) 295, 7; (9) 313; 314; 317; 318; (10) 304.

G. (1) 610; (2) 369; (3) 374; (4) 352; (5) 403; (6) 399, N. 1; (7) 408; (8) 631, 2; (9) 649 ff.; (10) 597.

HB. (1) 284, 8; (2) 346; (3) 354; (4) 363, 1, *b*; (5) 424, *a*; (6) 445; (7) 444; (8) 513, 2; (9) 533; 534; 535, 2; (10) 581.

H. (1) 510; (2) 442; (3) 451, N. 2; (4) 434; (5) 479; (6) 473, 3; (7) 475; (8) 591, 4; (9) 642-645; 647; (10) 579.

TRANSLATE: Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur. Eās rēs, quās commemorāstis (=cōmmemorāvistis), memoriā teneō. Nōn meritō populī Rōmānī accidērunt. Eō gravius ferō quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidērunt. Populus Rōmānus ūllius iniūriae sibi cōnsciūs nōn fuit. Sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnsciūs fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre. Nihil commissum ā populō Rōmānō erat quārē timēret. Nōn sine causā timendum est.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XIV as far as *putāret*.

CHAPTER XIV, SECOND PART

VOCABULARY

admīror, admīrārī, admīrātus , be surprised, wonder at, admire.	enim, conj. , really, for.
commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis, f. , a change.	glōrior, glōriārī, glōriātus , glory in, boast.
cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus , become accustomed; <i>perf.</i> , be accustomed, be wont.	impūne, adv. , \with impunity.
contumēlia, contumēliae, f. , an insult, indignity.	impūnitās, impūnitātis, f. , freedom from punishment, impunity.
dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus , lay down, lay aside.	insolenter, adv. , insultingly.
diūturnus, diūturna, diūturnum , long (<i>in time</i>), long continued.	interdum, adv. , for a time, sometimes.
doleō, dolēre, doluī, doli-tūrus , feel pain, suffer, grieve.	recēns, Gen., recentis, adj. , new, fresh, late.
	secundus, secunda, secundum , following, second, favorable.
	temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātus , try, attempt.
	vexō, vexāre, vexāvī, vexātus , harass, annoy, ravage.

IDIOMS

quod sī, but if.

eōdem pertinet, tends in the same direction, amounts to the same thing.

impūne iniūriās inferre, commit wrongs with impunity.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Object of Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.
 (2) *Quō*-Clause of Purpose. (3) Substantive *Quod*-Clause.
 (4) Interrogative Sentences. (5) Rhetorical Questions in Indirect Discourse. (6) Complementary Infinitive.

A. (1) 350; (2) 531, 2, *a*; (3) 572; (4) 332, *b*; (5) 586; (6) 456.

B. (1) 206, 2; (2) 282, 1, *a*; (3) 299; (4) 162, 2, *b*; (5) 162, 3; 315, 2; (6) 328.

G. (1) 376; (2) 545, 2; (3) 524; (4) 453-456; (5) 651, R. 1.; (6) 423.

HB. (1) 350; (2) 502, 2, *b*; (3) 552, 1 and 2; (4) 231, *d*; (5) 235; 591, *a*; (6) 586.

H. (1) 454; (2) 568, 7; (3) 588, 3; (4) 378; (5) 642, 2; (6) 607.

TRANSLATE: Num iniūriarum memoriam dēpōnere possum? Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivīscī vellem, num recentium iniūriarum memoriam dēpōnere possum? Mē invitō iter per prōvinciam temptāstis (= temptāvistis). Quod vestrā victōriā glōriāminī eōdem pertinet. Tam diū impūne iniūriās intulistis. Tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrāminī. Deī immortālēs hominēs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscuntur; hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdunt. Cōnsuērunt (=cōnsuēvērunt) deī secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdere.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XIV as far as *concedere*.

CHAPTER XIV, LAST PART

VOCABULARY

discēdō, discēdere, discessī,	satisfaciō. satisfacere, satis-
discessūrus, go apart, re-	fēcī, satisfactus. satisfy,
tire, depart.	make amends, apologize.
polliceor, pollicēri, pollici-	testis, testis, m. and f., a wit-
tus, promise, offer.	ness.
respōsum, respōsī, n., an	
answer, reply.	

IDIOMS

illi dē iniūriis satisfacere, make amends to him for wrongs.
iniūriās alicui inferre, commit wrongs against some one.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Objective Genitive. (2) Dative with *Satisfacere*.
 (3) Dative with Compounds. (4) Ablative Absolute.
 (5) *Utī*-Clause of Purpose. (6) *Utī*-Clause of Result.
 (7) Adversative *Cum*-Clause.

A. (1) 348; (2) 368, 2; (3) 370; (4) 420, 1; (5) 531; (6) 537;
 (7) 549.

B. (1) 200; (2) 187, II; (3) 187, III, 2; (4) 227, 2. *a*); (5) 282;
 (6) 284, 1; (7) 309, 3.

G. (1) 363, 2; (2) 346; (3) 347; (4) 409; (5) 545; (6) 552;
 (7) 587.

HB. (1) 354; (2) 362, I; (3) 376, *a*; (4) 421, 3; (5) 502, 2;
 (6) 521, 2; (7) 526.

H. (1) 440, 2; (2) 426, N. 2; (3) 429; (4) 489, 1; (5) 568;
 (6) 570; (7) 598.

TRANSLATE: Cum ea ita sint, tamen ego cum Helvētiis
 pācem faciam. Obsidēs ab Helvētiis mihi dentur utī ea
 vōs factūrōs (esse) intellegam. Helvētiī Haeduīs iniū-

riās intulērunt. Sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs satisfacient, cum iīs pācem faciam. Ita Helvētīī ā maiōribus suīs īnstitūtī sunt, utī obsidēs accipere cōsuērīnt (= cōsuēverint); eius rei populus Rōmānus est testis.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XIV, LAST PART.

CHAPTER XV

VOCABULARY

amplius , <i>comp. adv. or noun</i> , more.	populātiō , populātiōnis , <i>f.</i> , plundering, pillaging.
circiter , <i>adv. and prep. with acus.</i> , around, about, near.	praemittō , praemittere , praemisi , praemissus , send ahead.
cupidē (<i>comp.</i> , cupidius), <i>adv.</i> , eagerly (<i>comp.</i> , more eagerly, too eagerly).	praesentia , praesentiae , <i>f.</i> , presence, the present time.
īnsequor , īnsequī , īnsecūtus , follow after, pursue.	prōpellō , prōpellere , prōpulī , prōpulsus , drive back, repel, rout.
intersum , interesse , interfui , be between, take part in.	quīngenti , quīngentae , quīngenta , five hundred.
laccessō , laccessere , laccessivī , laccessitus , harass, attack, provoke.	quīnī , quīnae , quīna , five each, five apiece.
moveō , movēre , mōvī , mōtus , move, influence, break up (<i>camp</i>).	rapīna , rapīnae , <i>f.</i> , plunder; <i>pl.</i> , plundering.
pābulātiō , pābulātiōnis , <i>f.</i> , foraging, procuring fodder.	sēnī , sēnae , sēna , six each, six apiece.
	subsistō , subsistere , substiti , make a stand, halt.

IDIOMS

quās in partēs, in what direction?

iter facere, to march.

novissimum agmen, the rear.

aliēnō locō, in an unfavorable place.

satis habēbat prohibēre, deemed it sufficient to prevent, was satisfied with preventing, *etc.*

nōn numquam, sometimes.

quina milia passuum, five miles each (*day*).

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Meanings of the Comparative Degree. (2) Accusative of Duration. (3) Ablative of Place. (4) Partitive Ablative. (5) Ablative of Comparison. (6) Ablative of Separation. (7) Relative Clause of Purpose. (8) Result Clause. (9) Indirect Question. (10) Participle with *Habēō*. (11) Number of a Relative whose Antecedent is a Collective Noun.

A. (1) 291, *a*; (2) 423; (3) 429; (4) 346, *c*; (5) 406; (6) 401; (7) 531, 2; (8) 537; (9) 573 f.; (10) 497, *b*; (11) 280, *a*; 306, *b*.

B. (1) 240; (2) 181; (3) 228, 1, *b*; (4) 201, 1, *a*; 5) 217; (6) 214, 2; (7) 282, 2; (8) 284; (9) 300; (10) 337, 7; (11) 250, 4.

G. (1) 297, 2; (2) 336; (3) 385, N. 1; (4) 372, R. 2; (5) 398; (6) 390, 2; (7) 630; (8) 552; (9) 467; (10) 241, N. 2; (11) 614, 3, *a*.

HB. (1) 241, 2; (2) 387, II; (3) 436; (4) 346, *c*; (5) 416, *d*; (6) 408, 2; (7) 502, 2; (8) 521, 2; (9) 537, *b, c*; (10) 605, 5; (11) 331, 1.

H. (1) 498; (2) 417; (3) 485, 2; (4) 444; (5) 471; (6) 462; (7) 590; (8) 570; (9) 649, II; (10) 640, 2; (11) 397.

TRANSLATE: Quās in partēs hostēs iter faciunt? Equitēs vidēbunt quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Equitātum omnem praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Equitēs cupidius novissimum agmen īsecūtī sunt. Aliēnō locō proelium committunt. Helvētiī subsistere nōn numquam coepērunt. Caesar satis habēbat hostem rapīnīs prohibēre. Inter hostēs et Rō-

mānōs nōn amplius quīnque mīlibus passuum intererat.
Diēs quīndecim nōn amplius quīnīs mīlibus passuum
intererat.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XV.



*Through this valley the Helvetians marched, while Caesar followed
five or six miles behind.*

CHAPTER XVI, FIRST PART

VOCABULARY

āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āver-
sus, turn away, estrange.

comportō, comportāre, com-
portāvī, comportātus, col-
lect, bring in.

cōferō, cōferre, contulī,
conlātus, bring together,
collect, compare, ascribe,
defer.

cotidiē, *adv.*, daily, every day.

flāgitō, flāgitāre, flāgitāvi,
flāgitātus, demand.

frīgus, frīgoris, n., cold, cold
weather; *pl.*, frosts.

frūmenta, frūmentōrum (pl.
of frūmentum), *n.*, standing
grain.

mātūrus, mātūra, mātūrum,
ripe, early.

pābulum, pābuli, n., fodder,
green fodder.

pūblicē, adv., publicly, as a
state.

subvehō, subvehere, subvexī,
subvectus, bring up.

IDIOMS

nē. . . quidem, not even. The emphatic word comes between
nē and *quidem*.

minus poterat, he could not. *Minus* is simply a milder nega-
tive than *nōn*.

diem ex diē dūcunt, they put him off from day to day.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Two Accusatives with Verbs of Asking. (2) Ab-
lative with *Ūtor*. (3) Ablative of the Route. (4) Inform-
al Indirect Discourse. (5) Historical Infinitive (= Im-
perfect Indicative).

A. (1) 396; (2) 410; (3) 429, *a*; (4) 592; (5) 463.

B. (1) 178, 1, *a*; (2) 218, 1; (3) 218, 9; (4) 323; (5) 335.

G. (1) 339; (2) 407; (3) 401; (4) 508, 3; (5) 647.

HB. (1) 393; (2) 429; (3) 426; (4) 535, 1, *a*; (5) 595.

H. (1) 411; (2) 477; (3) 476; (4) 649, I; (5) 610.

TRANSLATE: Haeduī frūmentum erant pūblicē polli-
citī. Gallia sub septentrionibus posita est. Propter
frīgora frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant. Nē pābuli
quidem cōpia suppetēbat. Frūmentum flūmine subvexe-
rat. Eō frūmentō ūtī minus poterat. Diem ex diē dū-
cēbant Haeduī. (Frūmentum) cōferri dīcēbant.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XVI as far as *dīcere*.

CHAPTER XVI, LAST PART

VOCABULARY

accūsō. **accūsāre.** **accūsāvī,**
accūsātus, accuse, blame,
 find fault with.

annuus, annua, annum, adj.,
 for a year, annual.

convocō, convocāre, convo-
cāvī, convocātus, call to-
 gether, summon.

dēstituō, dēstituere, dēstitūī,
dēstitūtus, abandon, desert.

diūtius (*compar. of diū*), longer,
 too long.

emō, emere, ēmī, ēemptus,
 buy, purchase.

īnstō, īnstāre, īstitī, īnstā-
tūrus, press on, be at hand,
 threaten.

Liscus, Liscī, m., Liscus, *chief*
magistrate of the Haeduans in
58 B. C.

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus, meas-
 ure, deal out, distribute.

nex, necis, f., death, violent
 death.

precēs,¹ precum, f., prayers,
 entreaties.

propinquus, propinqua, pro-
pinquum, near, related ; *pl.,*
relatives.

sublevō, sublevāre, suble-
vāvī, sublevātus, lighten,
 raise up, assist.

IDIOMS

magistrātūī praeerat, held office.

tam necessariō tempore, at so critical a time.

magnā ex parte, to a large extent.

tam propinquīs hostibus, with the enemy so near.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Dative with Compounds. (2) Two Accusatives with Verbs of Calling. (3) Ablative of Attendant Circumstances. (4) Causal *Cum*-Clause. (5) Subjunctive in a Causal *Quod*-Clause. (6) Narrative Time Clause. (7) Infinitive as Subject of *Oportet*. (8) Imperfect Sub-

¹ The singular of this word is rare except the ablative, *prece*.

junctive, a Means of expressing Past-future¹ Ideas.
(9) Subjunctive by Attraction.

A. (1) 370; (2) 393; (3) 419; (4) 519; (5) 540. N. 2;
(6) 543; (7) 454; (8) 511, N. 1; (9) 593.

B. (1) 187, III; (2) 177, 1, 3; (3) 221; (4) 286, 2; (5) 286,
1; (6) 287, 1; (7) 327, 1; (8) 269, 2; (9) 324, 1.

G. (1) 347; (2) 340; (3) 409; (4) 586; (5) 541; 542;
(6) 561; (7) 535; (8) 277, 4; (9) 663.

HB. (1) 376; (2) 392; (3) 422, I; (4) 526; (5) 535, a, N. 2;
(6) 557; (7) 585; (8) 508; 509; (9) 539.

H. (1) 429; (2) 410; (3) 489; (4) 598; (5) 588; (6) 602;
(7) 615; (8) 541, 2; (9) 652.

TRANSLATE: *Diēs instat quō diē frūmentum militibus mētiri oportēbit. Diēs instābat quō diē frūmentum mētiri oportēret. Liscus summō magistrātui praeerat. Neque emī neque ex agrīs sumi potest frūmentum. Graviter eōs accūsāt quod ab iīs nōn sublevētur. Magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēpit.*

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XVI, LAST PART.

CHAPTER XVII

VOCABULARY

anteā, adv., before, previously.

coērcēō, coērcēre, coērcui,

coērcitus, confine, restrain.

dēmum, adv., at last, at length.

dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterrui,

dēterritus, frighten off, prevent.

improbus, improba, improbum, bad, wicked, reckless.

perferō, perferre, pertulī, per-

¹ Future from a past point of view; e.g. he said that he would come to-morrow.

lātus , bear through, endure, submit to.	great, how much, as great as, as.
privātim , <i>adv.</i> , privately, as private persons.	sēditiosus , sēditiosa , sēditio- sum , seditious, factious.
prōpōnō , prōpōnere , prōpo- sui , prōpositus , place be- fore, state, make known.	taceō , tacēre , tacui , be silent, keep secret, conceal.
quantus , quanta , quantum , <i>rel. and interrog. adj.</i> , how	tum , <i>adv.</i> , then.

IDIOMS

quam diū, as long as ; how long ?

nōn nūlli, some.

praestat, it is better.

quān etiam, nay even.

plūrimum valēre, avail very much, be very strong.

plūs posse. avail more, have more influence, have greater power.

dēterrere nē cōferant, prevent from furnishing.

ūnā cum, along with.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Subjective Genitive. (2) Dative with Verbs of Taking Away. (3) Accusative of Degree. (4) Ablative of Attendant Circumstances. (5) Volitive Substantive Clause with Verbs of Hindrance. (6) Descriptive Clause. (7) Substantive *Quān*-Clause with Verbs of Doubt. (8) *Quod*-Clause of Respect. (9) Infinitive as Subject. (10) Causal Participle.

A. (1) 343, N. ; (2) 381 ; (3) 390, c ; (4) 412, a ; (5) 558, b ; (6) 535, a ; (7) 558 ; (8) 572, a ; (9) 452, 1 ; (10) 496.

B. (1) 199 ; (2) 188, 2, d ; (3) 176, 2, b, 3 ; (4) 221 ; (5) 295, 3 ; (6) 283, 2 ; (7) 298 ; (8) 299, 2 ; (9) 330 ; (10) 337, 2, f.

G. (1) 363, 1 ; (2) 345, R. 1 ; (3) 334 ; (4) 392 ; (5) 548 ; (6) 631, 2 ; (7) 555, 2 ; (8) 525, 2 ; (9) 422 ; (10) 666.

HB. (1) 344 ; (2) 371 ; (3) 387, III ; (4) 422, II, 2 ; (5) 502,

3, *b*; (6) 521, 1; (7) 521, 3, *b*; 470, 4, *a*; (8) 552, 2; (9) 585; (10) 604, 2.

H. (1) 440, 1; (2) 427; (3) 416, 2; (4) 473, 3; (5) 566; (6) 591, 1; (7) 595, 1; (8) 588, 3, N.; (9) 615; (10) 638, 1.

TRANSLATE : Liscus (id) quod tacuerat prōpōnit. Auctōritās nōn nullōrum plūrimum valet. Sunt nōn nullī quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat. Nōn nullī prīvātīm plūs possunt quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hī multitūdinem dēterrent nē frūmentum cōnferant. Frūmentum cōnferre dēbent. Iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possunt. Praestat Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre. Nōn dubitāre dēbēmus quīn Rōmānī Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. (Ea) quae in castrīs geruntur hostibus ēnūntiantur. Hī ā mē coērcērī nōn possunt. Quantō id cum periculō fēcī? Intellegō quantō id cum periculō fēcērim. Quam diū potuī tacuī.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XVII.

CHAPTER XVIII, FIRST PART

VOCABULARY

audācia, audāciae, *f.* boldness, daring.

concilium, concili, *n.*, meeting, council.

conventus, conventūs, *m.*, assembly, court.

dēsīgnō, dēsīgnāre, dēsīgnāvī, dēsīgnātus, indicate, mean.

dīmīttō, dīmīttēre, dīmīsī,

dīmīssus, send away, let go, dismiss.

iactō, iactāre, iactāvī, iactātus, toss, toss about, discuss.

liberālītās, liberālītātis, *f.*, generosity.

licēor, licērī, licītus, bid (*at an auction*).

portōrium, portōrī, *n.*, toll, customs, duty.

praesēns , <i>Gen.</i> , praesentis , <i>adj.</i> , present.	tentus , hold back, detain, re- tain.
redimō , redimere , redēmī , redēptus , buy back, pur- chase, buy up.	sēcrētō , <i>adv.</i> , privately.
reperiō , reperīre , repperī , re- pertus , find, find out, learn.	sentiō , sentire , sēnsī , sēnsus , perceive, know, think.
retineō , retinēre , retinuī , re-	vectīgal , vectīgālis , <i>n.</i> , tax, tribute, revenue.
	vērus , vēra , vērūm , true.

IDIOMS

plūribus praesentibus, in the presence of too many.

ipse est, he is the very man.

rēs novae, a change in government, revolution.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Objective Genitive. (2) Accusative of Duration.
(3) Construction with *Quaerō*. (4) Subject of an In-
finitive. (5) Conditional Ablative Absolute. (6) Ab-
lative of Attendant Circumstances. (7) Ablative of
Price. (8) Descriptive Ablative. (9) Indirect Dis-
course. (10) *Habeō* with a Participle.

A. (1) 349, *a*; (2) 423, 2; (3) 396, *a*; (4) 397, *e*; (5) 420, 4;
(6) 420, 5; (7) 416; (8) 415; (9) 580, *a*; (10) 497, *b*.

B. (1) 204; (2) 181; (3) 178, *a*; (4) 184; (5) 227, 2, *b*;
(6) 221; (7) 225; (8) 224; (9) 314; (10) 337, 7.

G. (1) 374, 5; (2) 336; (3) 339, R.1.; (4) 343, 2; (5) 667;
(6) 409; (7) 404; (8) 400; (9) 650; (10) 238.

HB. (1) 354; (2) 387, II; (3) 393, *c*; (4) 398; (5) 421, 6;
(6) 422, I; (7) 427; (8) 443; (9) 534, 1, 2; (10) 605, 5.

H. (1) 451; (2) 417; (3) 411, 4; (4) 415; (5) 489, 1;
(6) 489; (7) 478; (8) 473, 2; (9) 642, 1; 643; (10) 640, 2.

TRANSLATE: Hāc ōrātiōne Dumnorīx dēsīgnātur.
Caesar ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem dēsīgnārī sentiēbat.

Quaerit ex Liscō sōlō ea. Haec sunt vēra. Ipse est Dumnorīx magnā apud plēbem grātiā. Dumnorīx est cupidus rērum novārum. Portōria vectīgāliaque parvō pretiō redēmit. Complūrēs annōs omnia vectīgālia redēpta habet. Illō licente contrā licērī audet nēmō.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XVIII as far as *nēmō*.

CHAPTER XVIII, SECOND PART

VOCABULARY

alō, alere, alui, altus , nourish, support, keep.	largior, largiri, largitus , give freely, bribe.
Biturigēs, Biturigum, m. , a tribe of Gauls west of the <i>Haedui</i> .	largiter, adv. , abundantly.
conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvi, conlocātus , place, arrange, give.	nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūpta , veil one's self, marry (<i>of the bride</i>).
familiāris, familiāre, adj. , of the household, private, intimate.	potentia, potentiae, f. , power, influence.
illic, adv. , there, in that place.	semper, adv. , always.
	soror, sorōris, f. , sister.
	sūmptus, sūmptūs, m. , expense.

IDIOMS

- rēs familiāris**, private property.
largiter posse, have very great influence.
huius potentiae causā, for the sake of this influence.
soror ex mātre, half-sister.
sorōrem nūptum conlocāsse (=conlocāvisse), had given his sister in marriage.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Genitive with *Causā*. (2) Dative with Compounds. (3) Ablative of Means. (4) Locative. (5) Gerund. (6) Accusative Supine.

A. (1) 359, *b*; (2) 370; (3) 409; (4) 427, 3; (5) 506; (6) 509.

B. (1) 198, 1; (2) 187, III; (3) 218; (4) 232, 2; (5) 338, 3; (6) 340, 1, *b*.

G. (1) 373; (2) 347; (3) 401; (4) 411, 2; (5) 432; (6) 435.

HB. (1) 444, *d*; 339, *d*; (2) 376; (3) 423; (4) 449, *a*; (5) 612, III; (6) 618 and footnote 2.

H. (1) 475, 2; (2) 429; (3) 476; (4) 483; 484, 2; (5) 628; (6) 634.

TRANSLATE: *Dumnorix* suam rem familiārem auxit. *Facultātēs* ad largiendum magnās comparāvit. Magnum numerum equitātūs alit et circum sē habet. Etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter potest. Huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī potentissimō conlocāvit. Ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habet. Sorōrem ex mātre nūptum in aliam civitātem conlocāvit.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XVIII as far as *civitātēs conlocāsse*.

CHAPTER XVIII, LAST PART

VOCABULARY

adfinitās, adfinitātis, *f.*, relationship, alliance.

adversus, adversa, adversum, opposite, unfavorable.

antiquus, antīqua, antīquum, old, ancient.

cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupītus, desire, be eager for, wish well for.

dēminuō, dēminuere, dēminuī, dēminūtus, lessen, impair.

equester, equestris, equestre, of the cavalry.	perterreō, perterrēre. perter- ruī, perterritus, frighten,
faveō, favēre, fāvi, fautūrus, be favorable to, favor.	terrify, alarm.
honor, honōris, m., respect, honor, office.	restituō. restituere. restitui, restitūtus, set up again, re-
ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, perf. with <i>present meaning, hate.</i>	store.

IDIOMS

suō nōmine, on his own account.

in quaerendō, upon making inquiry.

imperio populī Rōmānī, under the rule of the Roman people.

in spem venīre, entertain hope.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Indefinite Pronoun *Quis*. (2) Dative of Purpose.
(3) Dative with *Faveō*. (4) Dative of Reference. (5) Ab-
lative of Attendant Circumstances. (6) Ablative of the
Measure of Difference. (7) *Quod*-Clause of Respect
(8) Gerundive.

A. (1) 310, *a*; (2) 382, 1; (3) 367; (4) 376; (5) 404;
(6) 414; (7) 572, *a*; (8) 504.

B. (1) 91, 5; (2) 191, 2, *b*; (3) 187, II, *a*; (4) 188; (5) 221;
(6) 223; (7) 299, 2; (8) 339.

G. (1) 315; (2) 356; (3) 346; (4) 350, 2; (5) 408; (6) 403.
4; (7) 525, 2; (8) 428.

HB. (1) 276, 1; (2) 360, *b*; (3) 362; (4) 366; (5) 422, I;
(6) 424; (7) 552, 2; (8) 612, I, IV.

H. (1) 512, 1; (2) 433; (3) 426; (4) 425, 4; (5) 475; (6) 479,
3; (7) 588, 3, N.; (8) 626.

TRANSLATE: Favet et cupit Helvētiīs. Ōdit suō nō-
mine Caesarem. Sī quid Rōmānīs accidit, summam in
spem rēgnī obtinendī venit. Imperio populī Rōmānī dē

rēgnō dēspērat. Proelium adversum paucīs ante diēbus factum erat. Quod proelium adversum factum erat, initium fugae ab Dumnorīge factum est. Equitātum auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant. Equitātui Dumnorīx praeerat. Eōrum fugā reliquus est equitātus perterritus.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XVIII, LAST PART.

CHAPTER XIX

VOCABULARY

animadvertō, animadvertere, animadverti, animadversus , attend to, notice, punish.	offēnsiō, offēnsiōnis, f. , offense, hurting.
commonefaciō, commonefacere, commonefēcī, commonefactus , remind, admonish.	removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtus , move back, remove, dismiss.
iniussū, m. , <i>only in abl.</i> , without orders, without command.	repugnō, repugnāre, repugnāvī, repugnātūrus , resist, oppose.
īnsciēns, Gen., īnscientis, adj. , not knowing, unaware.	sēparātīm, adv. , separately, privately.
īnterpres, interpretis, m. , an interpreter.	supplicium, supplicī, n. , punishment (<i>by death</i>).
īūstitia, īūstitiae, f. , justice, uprightness.	temperantia, temperantiae, f. , self-control, discreteness.
offendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus , strike against, hurt.	

IDIOMS

- obsidēs dandōs cūrāre**, arrange the giving of hostages.
satis causae, sufficient reason, enough (of) cause.
in eum animadvertere, punish him.
alicui fidem habēre, have confidence in some one.

ipsō praesente, in his own presence.
causā cognitā, after hearing his case.
rēs certae, unquestionable facts.
inscientibus ipsīs, without their knowledge.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Dative with *Repugnō*. (2) Ablative of Accordance. (3) Volitive Substantive Clause. (4) Substantive Clause of Fear. (5) Clause representing an Act Anticipated and Prepared For. (6) Clause of Propriety, Reasonableness, or Obligation with *Quārē*. (7) Causal *Cum*-Clause. (8) Indirect Question of Fact. (9) Substantive *Quod*-Clause. (10) Subjunctive by Attraction. (11) Object Infinitive. (12) Gerundive.

A. (1) 367; (2) 418, *a*; (3) 563; (4) 564; (5) 551, *b*; (6) 535, *a*; (7) 549; (8) 586; (9) 572; (10) 593; (11) 563, *a*; (12) 500, 4.

B. (1) 187, II, *a*; (2) 220, 3; see also 219, 2; (3) 295, 1; (4) 296, 2; (5) 292, 1, *a*; (6) 295, 7; (7) 286, 2; (8) 300; (9) 299, 1; (10) 324; (11) 331, II; (12) 337, 8, *b*, 2.

G. (1) 346; (2) 408, N. 1; (3) 546; (4) 550, 2; (5) 577; (6) 631, 2; (7) 586; (8) 467; (9) 525, 1; (10) 663; (11) 423, N. 6; (12) 430.

HB. (1) 362; 363, 1; (2) 414, *a*; (3) 502, 3; (4) 502, 4; (5) 507, 4, *a*; (6) 513, 2; (7) 526; (8) 537, *b*; (9) 552, 1; (10) 539; (11) 587; (12) 612, III.

H. (1) 426; (2) 475, 3; (3) 565; (4) 567; (5) 605, II; (6) 591, 4; (7) 598; (8) 649, II; (9) 588, 3; (10) 652; (11) 565, 3; (12) 622.

TRANSLATE: Dumnorīx obsidēs dandōs cūrāvit. Ea omnia iniussū Caesaris et civitātis fēcit. Satis est causae quārē in eum animadvertat. Caesar Diviciāci summam in sē voluntātem cognōverat. Caesar cotidiānōs inter-

pretēs remōvit; per C. Valerium Troucillum cum Dīvici-
 ācō conloquitur. Troucillō summam fidem habēbat. Quae
 dē Dumnorīge sunt dicta? Commonefacit quae sint dicta.
 Petit ut ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuāt.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XIX.

CHAPTER XX, FIRST PART

VOCABULARY

adulēscētia, adulēscētiaē,
f., youth.

amor, amōris, m., love, affec-
 tion.

**complector, complectī, com-
 plexus,** clasp, embrace.

**crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crē-
 tus,** grow, increase, become
 strong.

exīstimātiō, exīstimātiōnis,
f., opinion, estimate, reputa-
 tion.

**frāternus, frāterna, frāter-
 num, adj.**, of a brother,
 brotherly.

lacrima, lacrimae, f., a tear.

**minuō, minuire, minuī, mi-
 nūtus,** diminish, weaken, re-
 duce.

nervus, nervī, m., sinew; *pl.*,
 power, force.

**obsecrō, obsecrāre, obse-
 crāvī, obsecrātus,** implore,
 entreat.

perniciēs, perniciēī, f., ruin.

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, know.

**volgus, volgī, (or vulgus,
 vulgī) n.**,¹ crowd, mass,
 common people.

IDIOMS

minimum posse, have very little influence.

plūs dolōris, more (of) trouble.

¹ Three nouns of the second declension ending in *-us* are neuter:
pelagus, sea; *vīrus*, poison; *volgus*, throng.

quā ex rē, and on account of this (thing).

quid gravius statuere, pass too severe a judgment.

quod sī, but if.

suā voluntāte factum, done with his approval.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Use of *Quisquam*. (2) Accusative of Degree. (3) Ablative of Attendant Circumstances. (4) Ablative with *Ūtor*. (5) Locative. (6) Substitute for a Future Infinitive. (7) Substantive Clause of Actuality. (8) Substantive Clause of Request. (9) Gerundive.

A. (1) 312; (2) 390, *c*; (3) 412, *a*; (4) 410; (5) 427, 3; (6) 569, *a*; (7) 569, 3; (8) 563; (9) 506.

B. (1) 252, 4; (2) 176, 3; (3) 221; (4) 218, 1; (5) 232, 2; (6) 270, 3; (7) 297, 2; (8) 295, 1; (9) 339, 1.

G. (1) 317; (2) 334; (3) 399, *N.* 1; (4) 407; (5) 411, 2; (6) 248; (7) 553, 4, *R.* 3; (8) 546; (9) 432.

HB. (1) 276, 7; (2) 387, *III*; (3) 422, *I.* *a*; (4) 429; (5) 449, *a*; (6) 472, *c*; (7) 521, 3; (8) 530, 2; (9) 612, *III*.

H. (1) 513; (2) 416, 2; (3) 473, 3; (4) 477; (5) 484, 2; (6) 619, 2, 3; (7) 571, 1; (8) 565; (9) 628.

TRANSLATE: Sciō ego illa esse vēra; nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris capit. Cum ego plūrimum possem, per mē crēvit. Cum ille minimum posset, per mē crēvit. Hīs opibus Dumnorīx ad minuendam grātiā frātris ūtēbātur. Ego tamen amōre frāternō commoveor. Quod sī quid eī acciderit, nēmō exīstimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum (esse); quā ex rē tōtīus Galliae animī ā mē āvertentur. Dicit futūrum utī animī ā sē īvertantur.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XX as far as *āverterentur*.

CHAPTER XX, LAST PART

VOCABULARY

adhibeō, adhibēre, adhibui,	loquor, loquī, locūtus, speak,
adhibitus, call in, apply, use.	talk, say.
condōnō, condōnāre, condō-	orō, orāre, orāvi, orātus,
nāvi, condōnātus, pardon,	speak, beg, entreat.
forgive.	praeteritus, praeterita, prae-
cōnsolor, cōnsolāri, cōnsolā-	teritum, past, bygone.
tus, comfort, console.	prēndō, prēndere, prēndī,
dexter, dextera or dextra,	prēnsus, seize, take, grasp.
dexterum or dextrum, right	reprehendō, reprehendere,
(<i>not left</i>).	reprehendī, reprehēnsus,
dextra (<i>manus</i>), dextrae, f.,	restrain, blame.
the right hand.	vītō, vītāre, vītāvi, vītātus,
flēō, flēre, flēvi, flētus, weep,	shun, avoid.
weep for.	

IDIOMS

rei publicae iniūria, the wrong done to the (Roman) state.

eius voluntāti condōnāre, pardon in deference to his wish.

in reliquum tempus, for the future.

tantī est, is worth so much.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Objective Genitive. (2) Genitive of Indefinite Value. (3) Dative of Reference. (4) *Quibuscum*. (5) *Ut*-Clause of Purpose. (6) Volitive Substantive Clause. (7) Substantive Clause of Request without Connective. (8) Result Clauses. (9) *Cum*-Clause of Situation. (10) Indirect Question of Fact.

A. (1) 348; (2) 417; (3) 376; (4) 150, *d*; (5) 531, 1; (6) 563; (7) 565, *a*; (8) 537; (9) 546; (10) 586.

B. (1) 200; (2) 203, 3; (3) 188; (4) 142, 4; (5) 282; (6) 295, 1; (7) 295, 8; (8) 284, 1; (9) 288, B; (10) 300.

G. (1) 363, 2; (2) 379 f.; (3) 350, 2; (4) 413, R. 1; (5) 544; (6) 546; (7) 546, R. 2; (8) 552; (9) 585; (10) 651.

HB. (1) 354; (2) 356, 1; (3) 366; (4) 418, *a*; (5) 502, 2; (6) 502, 3; (7) 530, 2; p. 261, footnote 2; (8) 521, 2; (9) 524; (10) 537, *b*.

H. (1) 440, 2; (2) 448, 1; (3) 425, 4; (4) 182, 2; (5) 568; (6) 564, 1; (7) 565, 4; (8) 570; (9) 600, II; (10) 649, II.

TRANSLATE: Haec flēns ā Caesare petēbat. Diviciācum cōnsōlātus Caesar rogat (ut) finem ōrandī faciat. Reī pūblicae iniūriam eius voluntātī condōnat. Tantī eius apud Caesarem grātia est ut reī pūblicae iniūriam eius voluntātī condōnet. Praeteritā ego frātrī tuō condōnō. Quae Dumnorīx agat scīre potest.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XX, LAST PART.

CHAPTER XXI

VOCABULARY

ascendō, ascendere, ascendī,
ascēnsus, climb up, mount,
ascend.

ascēnsus, ascēnsūs, m., ascent,
acclivity.

circuitus, circuitūs, m., round-
about way, circuit.

cōsīdō, cōsīdere, cōsēdī,
cōnsessūrus, sit down, halt,
encamp.

facilis, facile, easy.

L. Sulla, L. Sullae, m., Lucius
Sulla, a great Roman general
and statesman.

M. Crassus, M. Crassī, m.,

Marcus Crassus, a wealthy
politician and general.

P. Cōsīdīus, P. Cōsīdī, m.,
Publius Considius.

perītus, perītā, perītum, ex-
perienced, skillful.

praetor, praetōris, m., a gen-
eral; a praetor, a Roman
magistrate next below consul
in rank.

quālis, quāle, interrog. adj., of
what sort?

**renūntiō, renūntiāre, renūn-
tiāvī, renūntiātus,** bring
back word, report.

IDIOMS

sub monte, at the foot of the mountain.

dē tertiā vigiliā, about the third watch.

cum iis ducibus, with those as guides.

summum iugum, the top of the ridge.

prō praetōre, with the authority of a general.

quid sui cōsili sit, what his plan is.

reī militāris peritus habētur, is considered skilled in military science.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Idiomatic Use of Adjectives. (2) Objective Genitive. (3) Accusative of Extent. (4) Ablative of Route. (5) Ablative of Time. (6) Relative Clause of Purpose.

A. (1) 293; (2) 349, *a*; (3) 425; (4) 429, *a*; (5) 423; (6) 531, 2.

B. (1) 241, 1; (2) 204, 1; (3) 181; (4) 218, 9; (5) 230; (6) 282, 2.

G. (1) 291, R. 2; (2) 374, 4; (3) 335; (4) 401; (5) 393; (6) 630.

HB. (1) 244; (2) 354; (3) 387, I; (4) 426; (5) 439; (6) 502, 2.

H. (1) 497, 4; (2) 450; 451; (3) 417; (4) 476; (5) 486; (6) 590.

TRANSLATE: *Hostēs sub monte cōnsēdērunt. Cōnsēdērunt mīlia passuum ab ipsius castris octō. Quālis est nātūra montis? Quālis est in circuitū ascēnsus? (Explōrātōrēs) quālis sit nātūra montis cognōscēt. Facilis est ascēnsus. Renūntiātum est facilem esse (ascēnsum). Labiēnum summum iugum montis ascendere iubet. P. Cōnsidius reī militāris peritissimus habebātur. In exercitū L. Sullae fuerat.*

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXI.

CHAPTER XXII

VOCABULÀRY

abstineō, abstinēre, abstinui, abstentus, hold back, refrain.	insigne, insignis, n., sign, badge, decoration.
accurrō, accurrere, accurri <i>and accucurri, accursurus,</i> run up to, hasten to.	intervallum, intervalli, n., interval, distance, space.
admittō,mittere, admisi, admissus, let go, commit, allow.	praecipio, praecipere, prae- cēpi, praeceptus, anticipate, command, instruct.
comperiō, comperire, com- peri, compertus, learn, dis- cover.	subducō, subducere, subdūxi, subductus, draw up, with- draw.
dēntique, adv., at last, finally.	timor, timoris, m., fear, alarm.
Gallicus, Gallica, Gallicum, <i>adj.,</i> of the Gauls, Gallic.	

IDIOMS

primā luce, at daybreak.
equō admissō, riding at full speed.
multō diē, late in the day.
prō visō, as seen, as a thing seen.
timōre perterritus, panic-stricken.
summus mōns, the top of the mountain.
quō consuērat intervallō, at the usual distance.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Dative with Compounds. (2) Ablative of Separation. (3) Ablative of Measure of Difference with *Absum*. *Longius* = *Longius quam*. (4) Ablative Absolute. (5) Ablative of Attendant Circumstances. (6) Ablative of Time. (7) Volitive Substantive Clause. (8) Adversative *Cum*-Clause of Situation. (9) Object Infinitive.

A. (1) 370; (2) 402; (3) 425, *b*; 407, *c.*; (4) 420, 5; (5) 412; (6) 423; (7) 566; (8) 549, N. 2; (9) 459.

B. (1) 187, III; (2) 214, 2; (3) 223; 217, 3; (4) 227, 2, *e*; (5) 221; (6) 230; (7) 295, 1; (8) 288, 1, B; 309, 3; (9) 331, I, IV.

G. (1) 347; (2) 390, 2; (3) 403, N. 1; 296, R. 4; (4) 410; (5) 399; (6) 393; (7) 546, 2; (8) 587; (9) 530; 532.

HB. (1) 376; (2) 408, 3; (3) 424; 416, *d*; (4) 421, 8; (5) 422, I; (6) 439; (7) 502, 3, *a*; (8) 525; (9) 587; 589.

H. (1) 429; (2) 464; (3) 479, 3; 471, 4; (4) 489; (5) 473, 3; (6) 486; (7) 564, II; (8), 598; (9) 613.

TRANSLATE: Summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur. Ipse mille et quīngentīs passibus aberat; neque ipsius adventus cognitus erat. Cōsidius equō admissō ad Caesarem accurrit; dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī. Caesar montem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluit. Id ego ā Gallicīs armīs cognōvī. Caesar Labiēnō praecēpit nē proelium committeret. Ā Caesare erat Labiēnō praeceptum nē proelium committeret. Sī Caesaris cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae erunt, undique in hostēs impetus fiet. Multō diē Caesar cognōvit montem ā suis tenērī. Helvētīi castra mōvērunt. Cōsidius (id) quod nōn viderat prō vīsō renūntiāvit.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXII.

CHAPTER XXIII

VOCABULARY

L. Aemilius, L. Aemilī, m.,	<i>Haeduanus, modern Mont</i>
Lucius Aemilius, <i>one of</i>	<i>Beuvray.</i>
<i>Caesar's minor officers.</i>	bīdūm, bīduī, n., a period of
Bibracte, Bibractis, n., Bi-	two days, two days.
<i>bracte, chief town of the</i>	commūtō, commūtāre, com-

mūtāvī , commūtātus , change, exchange.	tivum , <i>adj.</i> , runaway; <i>pl. as noun</i> , runaways.
cōfidō , cōfidere , cōfīsus , <i>semi-deponent verb</i> , trust, rely on, believe.	interclūdō , interclūdere , interclūsī , interclūsus , shut off, hinder.
convertō , convertere , convertī , conversus , turn around, change.	postrīdiē , <i>adv.</i> , on the following day.
cōpiōsus , cōpiōsa , cōpiōsum , full of supplies, wealthy, plentiful.	prīdiē , <i>adv.</i> , on the day before.
decuriō , decuriōnis , <i>m.</i> , decurion, commander of a squad of ten horsemen.	prōspiciō , prōspicere , prōspexī , prōspectus , look forward, provide for.
duodēvīginti , <i>indeclinable numeral</i> , eighteen.	seu , <i>same as sive</i> , or; seu . . . seu , <i>correlatives</i> , either . . . or.
fugitīvus , fugitīva , fugitīvum , <i>adj.</i> , runaway; <i>pl. as noun</i> , runaways.	supersum , superesse , superfui , be left over, remain, survive.

IDIOMS

- postrīdiē eius diēī**, on the day after this (day).
rei frūmentāriae prōspicere, provide for the grain supply.
eō magis, all the more (more on account of this).
ā novissimō agmine, from the rear.
itinere conversō, changing the direction of their march.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Genitive with *Postrīdiē*. (2) Accusative of Place to Which. (3) Dative of Reference. (4) Ablative of Separation. (5) Adversative Ablative Absolute. (6) Ablative of Degree with *Absum*. (7) Imperfect Subjunctive as a Past-future. (8) Subjunctive in a Causal *Quod*-Clause.

A. (1) 359, *b*; (2) 427; (3) 376; (4) 401; (5) 420, 3; (6) 425, *b*; (7) 511, footnote 1; (8) 540.



MONT BEUVRAY

Bibracte was situated on the summit of this hill.

B. (1) 201, 3, *a*; (2) 182; (3) 188, (4) 214, 1; (5) 227, 2, *c*; (6) 223; (7) 269, 1, 2; (8) 286, 1, *a*.

G. (1) 362; (2) 337; (3) 350, 2; (4) 390, 2; (5) 667; (6) 403, N. 1; (7) 277, 4; (8) 541, 3.

HB. (1) 380, *c*; (2) 450; (3) 367; (4) 408, 2; (5) 421, 5; (6) 424; (7) 508; 509; (8) 535, 2, *b*, N.

H. (1) 446, 5; (2) 418; (3) 425, 2; (4) 462; (5) 489, 1; (6) 479, 3; (7) 541, 2; 545, II, 3; (8) 588, II, 1.

TRANSLATE: Exercitui frumentum metiri oportebit. Omnino biduum superest cum frumentum metiri oportebit. Biduum supererat cum frumentum metiri oporteret. A Bibracte non amplius milibus passuum duodeviginti aberat. Rei frumentariae prospiciam. Rei frumentariae prospiciendum mihi est. Rei frumentariae prospicien-

dum (sibi esse) exīstimāvit. Timōre perterriti Rōmānī discēdunt ab Helvētiīs. Rōmānī pridē, superiōribus locīs occupātis, proelium nōn commīsērunt. Rōmānī rē frūmentāriā interclūduntur. Rōmānī rē frūmentāriā interclūdī possunt. Eō, quod rē frūmentāriā (Rōmānōs) interclūdī posse cōfiderent, commūtāvērunt cōsilium.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXIII.

CHAPTER XXIV

VOCABULARY.

advertō, advertere, adverti,	throw back, hurl back, drive back.
advērsus, turn towards, turn against, turn.	
compleō, complēre, complēvi, complētus, fill, fill up.	
cōnfertus, cōnferta, cōnfertum, crowded, dense.	
impedimentum, impedi-	
mentī, n., hindrance; <i>pl.,</i>	
<i>(heavy)</i> baggage.	
phalanx, phalangis, f., a	
phalanx, array (<i>of troops</i>).	
proximē, adv., (<i>superl. of</i>	
<i>prope</i>), lately, last, recently.	
reiciō, reicere, reiēcī, reiectus,	
	sarcina, -sarcinae, <i>f.,</i> pack, baggage carried by soldiers.
	succēdō, succēdere, successī, successūrus, come up, take the place of; prosper.
	sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, sustentus, withstand, endure, sustain, stop.
	triplex, <i>Gen.,</i> triplicis, <i>adj.,</i> threefold, triple.
	veterānus, veterāna, veterānūm, <i>adj.,</i> veteran.

IDIOMS

animum advertō, notice, take notice of.

in colle mediō, halfway up the hill.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Idiomatic Use of Adjectives. (2) Subjective Genitive. (3) Genitive of Material. (4) Relative Clause of Purpose. (5) Narrative Time Clause. (6) Infinitive as Object.



Caesar encamped here the night before the battle.

A. (1) 293; (2) 343; (3) 344; (4) 531, 2; (5) 543; (6) 563, *a*.

B. (1) 241, 1; (2) 199; (3) 197; (4) 282, 2; (5) 287, 1; (6) 331, II.

G. (1) 291, R. 2; (2) 363, 1; (3) 361; (4) 630; (5) 561; (6) 423, N. 6.

HB. (1) 244; (2) 344; (3) 349; (4) 502, 2; (5) 557; (6) 587.

H. (1) 497, 4; (2) 440, 1; (3) 440, 4; (4) 590; (5) 602; (6) 614.

TRANSLATE: Equitatum quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. In summō iugō collis duās legiōnēs con-

locārī iussit. Tōtum montem hominibus complērī iussit. Sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri et eum (locum) mūniri iussit.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXIV.

CHAPTER XXV, FIRST PART

VOCABULARY

aequō, aequāre, aequāvī, aequātus, make equal, equalize.	inflectō, inflectere, inflexī, inflexus, bend, bend down.
bracchium, bracchī, n., an arm.	nūdus, nūda, nūdum, adj., naked, unprotected.
cohortor, cohortārī, cohortātus, encourage, exhort.	perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfractus, break through.
commodē, adv., advantageously, conveniently, readily.	pīlum, pīlī, n., a javelin, the distinctive weapon of the Roman legion.
conligō, conligāre, conligāvī, conligātus, bind together, fasten together.	praeoptō, praeoptāre, praeoptāvī, praeoptātus, prefer.
dēstringō, dēstringere, dēstrinxī, dēstrictus, strip off, draw (<i>a sword</i>).	primum, adv., first, at first.
disiciō, disicere, disiēcī, disiectus, hurl apart, scatter, rout.	sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, adj., left (<i>not right</i>); sinistra, f., the left hand.
ēvellō, ēvellere, ēvellī and ēvulsī, ēvulsus, pull out.	trānsfigō, trānsfigere, trānsfixī, trānsfixus, pierce through.
ictus, ictūs, m., a stroke.	

IDIOMS

sē inflectere, become bent.

ad pugnam impedimentum, a hindrance in fighting.

Gallis impedimentō erat, it was a hindrance to the Gauls.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Dative of Reference used with a Dative of Purpose. (2) Ablative of Separation. (3) Ablative Absolute. (4) Ablative of Manner. (5) Purpose Clauses. (6) Result Clauses. (7) Causal *Cum*-Clause. (8) Substantive *Quod*-Clause. (9) Complementary Infinitive.



MONTMORT

From Caesar's position on the Hill of Armecy.

A. (1) 382, 1; (2) 401; (3) 420; (4) 412; (5) 531, 1; (6) 537; (7) 549; (8) 572; (9) 456.

B. (1) 191, 2, *a*; (2) 214, 2; (3) 227 entire; (4) 220; (5) 282; (6) 284; (7) 286, 2; (8) 299; (9) 328.

G. (1) 356; (2) 390; (3) 410; (4) 399; (5) 545; (6) 552; (7) 586; (8) 525; (9) 423.

HB. (1) 360, *b*; (2) 408; (3) 421 entire; (4) 445, 2; (5) 502, 2; (6) 521, 2; (7) 526; (8) 552, 1; (9) 586.

H. (1) 433; (2) 464; (3) 489; (4) 473, 3; (5) 568; (6) 570; (7) 598; (8) 588, 3; (9) 607, 1.

TRANSLATE: Caesar primum suum equum remōvit; dein le omnium equōs remōvit. Aequātum est omnium perīculum. Aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tollet. Caesar cohortātus suōs (mīlitēs) proelium commisit. Mīlitēs ē superiōre locō pīla mīsērunt. Plūra scūta ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfixa sunt. Scūta Gallōrum ūnō ictū pīlōrum conligāta sunt, cum ferrum sē inflexisset. Neque ēvellere neque satis commodē pugnāre poterant. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam impedīmentō erat quod pīla ē scūtīs ēvellere nōn poterant. Multī praeoptābant scūtum manū ēmittere.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXV as far as *corpore pugnāre*

CHAPTER XXV, LAST PART

VOCABULARY

apertus, aperta, apertum, <i>adj.</i> , open, exposed, unprotected.	sus. become exhausted, become weary.
bipertītō or bipartītō, <i>adv.</i> , in two divisions.	latus, lateris, &c. , side, flank.
circumveniō, circumvenire, circumvēnī, circumventus, surround.	redintegrō, redintegrāre, red- integrāvī, redintegrātus, renew.
cōspicor, cōspiciārī, cō- spiciātus, catch sight of, see.	rūrsus, adv. , again, back again.
dēfetiscor, dēfetiscī, dēfes-	submoveō, submovēre, sub- mōvī, submōtus, push back, dislodge, repulse.

IDIOMS

agmen claudere, bring up the rear.

ab latere apertō, on the exposed side.

captō monte, when the mountain had been reached.

conversa signa inferre, face about and advance.

ex itinere, on the march.

pedem referre, retreat, fall back.

novissimī, those in the rear.

sē recipere, betake one's self, retreat.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Agreement of a Verb with Two Subjects forming but One Idea. (2) Dative of Reference used with a Dative of Purpose. (3) Dative with *Resistō*. (4) Accusative of Extent. (5) Ablative Absolute of Situation and Time.

A. (1) 317, *b*; (2) 382, 1; (3) 367; (4) 425; (5) 420, 5.

B. (1) 255, 3; (2) 191, 2, *a*; (3) 187, II, *a*; (4) 181; (5) 227.

G. (1) 211, R. 1; (2) 356; (3) 346; (4) 335; (5) 665.

HB. (1) 331, 3; (2) 360, *b*; (3) 362; (4) 387, I; (5) 421.

H. (1) 392, 4; (2) 433; (3) 426, 1; (4) 417; (5) 489.

TRANSLATE: Tandem hostēs pedem referre coepērunt. Boī agmen hostium claudēbant; novissimīs praesidiō erant. Ex itinere nostrōs adgressī sunt; nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre coepērunt. Helvētīi rūsus instāre coepērunt. Rōmānī convertērunt signa. Conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt. Prīma et secunda aciēs signa intulit ut victīs resisteret.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXV, LAST PART.

CHAPTER XXVI

VOCABULARY

anceps , <i>Gen.</i> , ancipitis , <i>adj.</i> , twofold, doubtful.	obiciō , obicere , obiēcī , ob- iectus , throw in the way of, present, expose.
centum (C) , <i>indeclinable nu-</i> <i>meral</i> , one hundred.	raeda (or rēda) , raedae , <i>f.</i> , a wagon.
hōra , hōrae , <i>f.</i> , hour.	sepultūra , sepultūrae , <i>f.</i> , burial.
intermittō , intermittere , in- termisī , intermissus , inter- rupt, stop, omit, let pass.	subiciō , subicere , subiēcī , subiectus , throw under, throw from under, subject, place near.
iuuō , iuuāre , iūvī , iūtus , help, aid.	trāgula , trāgulae , <i>f.</i> , a (<i>Gallic</i>) javelin.
Lingonēs , Lingonum , <i>Acc.</i> , Lingonas , ¹ a <i>Gallic</i> nation northwest of the <i>Sequani</i> .	triduūm , triduī , <i>n.</i> , a period of three days, three days.
matarā , matarae , <i>f.</i> , spear, pike (<i>used by the Gauls</i>).	vāllum , vāllī , <i>n.</i> , palisade, rampart, wall.
moror , morarī , morātus , lin- ger, delay, detain.	vesper , vesperī , <i>m.</i> , evening.
nēve , <i>continuing ut or nē</i> , or not, and not, nor.	

IDIOMS

alterī . . . alterī , the one party . . . the other party.
prō vāllō , as a rampart, as a barricade.
hōra septīma , the seventh hour (<i>about one o'clock P.M.</i>).
āversum hostem , the back of an enemy, an enemy turned in flight.
eōdem locō habēre quō , treat the same as.
ad multam noctem , till late at night.
trīduō intermissō , after an interval of three days.
pugnātum est , the fighting was carried on, the battle raged, they fought.
quī sī , if they.

¹ This foreign word does not have quite the same endings as a pure Latin word would.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Partitive Ablative. (2) Subjective Genitive.
 (3) Objective Genitive. (4) Object of *Ūtor*, etc.
 (5) Ablative of Place. (6) Ablative of Time. (7) Ablative of Manner. (8) *Cum*-Clause of Situation and Cause. (9) Adversative *Cum*-Clause. (10) Volitive Substantive Clause. (11) Hours of the Roman Day.

A. (1) 346, c; (2) 343, N. 1; (3) 348; (4) 410; (5) 429, 1, 2; (6) 423; (7) 412; (8) 549, N. 2; (9) 549; (10) 563.

B. (1) 201, 1. a; (2) 199; (3) 200; (4) 218, 1; (5) 228, 1, b; (6) 231, 1; (7) 220, 1; (8) 286, 2; (9) 309, 3; (10) 295, 1.

G. (1) 372, R. 2; (2) 363, 1; (3) 363, 2; (4) 407; (5) 385, N. 1; (6) 393; (7) 399; (8) 586; (9) 587; (10) 546.

HB. (1) 346, c; (2) 344; (3) 354; (4) 429; (5) 436; (6) 439; 440; (7) 445; (8) 525; (9) 526; (10) 502, 3; (11) 670.

H. (1) 444; (2) 440, 1; (3) 440, 2; (4) 477; (5) 485, 1, 2; (6) 487; (7) 473, 3; (8) 600, II, 1; (9) 598; (10) 565; (11) 756, 2.

TRANSLATE: Alterī sē in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum est. Tōtō proeliō āversum hostem vīdit nēmō. Ad multam noctem pugnātum est. Prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant. Ex eō proeliō hominū mīlia centum trīgintā superfuērunt. Propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuērunt. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās mīsīt nē eōs frūmentō iuvārent. Sī eōs iūveritis, ego vōs eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs (habeō) habēbō.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXVI.

CHAPTER XXVII

VOCABULARY

conquīrō, conquīrere, con-
quisivī, conquīsītus, search
 for, hunt up.

dēditicius, dēditicia, dēdi-
ticium, *adj.*, surrendered.

dēditio, dēditionis, f., sur-
 render.

ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus,
 go out.

ignōrō, ignōrāre, ignōrāvī,
ignōrātus, fail to notice, not
 to know.

inopia, inopiae, f., want, lack.

occultō, occultāre, occultāvī,
occultātus, conceal, hide.

perfugiō, perfugere, perfūgī,
perfugitūrus, run away, flee.

poscō, poscere, poposci, de-
 mand, claim.

prōiciō, prōicere, prōiēcī,
prōiectus, throw forward,
 cast down, abandon.

suppliciter, adv., as a suppli-
 ant, as suppliants.

Verbigenus, Verbigenī, m., a
canton of the Helvetii.

IDIOMS

flentēs, in tears.

suppliciō adficere, punish (*with death*).

primā nocte, in the first part of the night.

quī cum, when these.

ad pedēs, at (his) feet.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Agreement according to Sense instead of Gram-
 matical Gender. (2) Substantive Clause of Fear.
 (3) *Cum*-Clause of Situation. (4) Informal Indirect Dis-
 course. (5) Irregular Subjunctive in a Causal *Quod*-
 Clause. (6) Narrative Time Clause. (7) *Dum*-Clause of
 Contemporaneous Act. (8) Use of Participles.

A. (1) 286. *b*; (2) 564; (3) 546, N. 1; (4) 592, 2; (5) 592.
 3, N.; (6) 543; (7) 556; (8) 496.

B. (1) 235, B, c; (2) 296, 2; (3) 288, 1, B; (4) 323; (5) 286, 1, a; (6) 287, 1; (7) 293, I; (8) 337, 2, c; 337, 2, f).

G. (1) 211, R. 1. b; (2) 550, 2; (3) 585; (4) 508, 3; (5) 541, N. 3; (6) 561; (7) 570; (8) 664, R. 1; 666.

HB. (1) 323, 2; 325. (2) 502, 4; (3) 524; (4) 535, a; (5) 535, 2. b, N.; (6) 557; (7) 559; (8) 604, 2; 604, 5.

H. (1) 389, 2; (2) 567. (3) 600, II; (4) 649, I; (5) 588, II, 1; (6) 602; (7) 604, 1; (8) 638.

TRANSLATE: Lēgātī Caesarem in itinere convēnērunt. Sē ad pedēs prōiēcērunt. Suppliciter locūtī pācem petiērunt. Eōs exspectāre adventum suum iussit. Dum ea conquīruntur, hominum mīlia sex timōre perterritī ad Rhēnum contendērunt; timent nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō adficiantur. In tantā multitūdine eōrum fuga aut occultārī aut ignōrārī potest. Spē salūtis inductī ad finīs Germānōrum contendērunt.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXVII.

CHAPTER XXVIII

VOCABULARY

atque, conj., and, and especially; *after expressions of likeness and comparison*, as, than.

bonitās, bonitātis, f., goodness, excellence, fertility (*of soil*).

condiciō, condiciōnis, f., agreement, condition, state.

famēs, famis, f., hunger, starvation.

frūx, frūgis, f., fruit, produce, *pl.*, crops.

perfuga, perfugae, m., deserter, fugitive.

pūrgō, pūrgāre, pūrgāvī, pūrgātus, make clean, free from blame.

ratio , rationis , <i>f.</i> , reckoning, account, reason, plan.	tolerō , tolerāre , tolerāvi , tolerātus , bear, endure, hold out.
redūcō , redūcere , redūxī , re- ductus , lead back, bring back.	unde , <i>rel. and interrog. adv.</i> , whence, from which.
resciscō , resciscere , rescivī , rescītus , discover, learn.	vacō , vacare , vacavi , vacātus , be unoccupied, lie waste.

IDIOMS

in hostium numerō habēre, treat as enemies.

sibi pūrgātī, free from blame in his sight.

in dēditionem accipere, receive their surrender.

pār iūris condiō atque ipsī erant, a state of civil rights like
that which they themselves enjoyed.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Relative at the Beginning of a Sentence. (2) Dative with *Finitimī*. (3) Dative of Reference. (4) Descriptive Ablative. (5) Locative. (6) Potential Descriptive Clause of Availability. (7) Substantive Clause of Consent. (8) Narrative Time Clause. (9) Informal Indirect Discourse.

A. (1) 308, *f.*; (2) 384; (3) 378; (4) 415; (5) 427, 3; (6) 535; *a*; (7) 563; (8) 543; (9) 592, 1.

B. (1) 251, 6; (2) 192; (3) 188; (4) 224; (5) 232, 2; (6) 283; (7) 295, 2; (8) 287, 1; (9) 323.

G. (1) 612; (2) 359; (3) 352; (4) 400; (5) 411, *R.* 2; (6) 631; (7) 553, 2; (8) 561; (9) 508, 3.

HB. (1) 284, 8; (2) 362, III; (3) 370; (4) 443; (5) 449, *a*; (6) 517, 2; (7) 531, 2; (8) 557; (9) 535, 1, *a*.

H. (1) 510; (2) 434, 2; (3) 425, 4; (4) 473, 2; (5) 484, 2; (6) 591, 1; (7) 564; (8) 602; (9) 649, I.

TRANSLATE: *Eōs redūcite, sī mihi pūrgātī esse vultis. Quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs utī (eōs) redūcerent imperā-*

vit. Reliquōs omniīs, obsidibus trāditīs, in dēditionem accēpit. Domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent. Nōluit eum locum vacāre. Germānī ē suīs finibus in Helvētiō-



THE RHINE BETWEEN GERMANY AND HELVETIA

rum finēs trānsībunt. Finitimī Allobrogibus erunt. Boiī ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī. Haeduī Boiōs in suīs finibus conlocābunt. Caesar Haeduīs ut Boiōs in suīs finibus conlocārent concessit. Illī Boiōs in parem iūris libertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXVIII.

CHAPTER XXIX

VOCABULARY

ad , <i>prep. with acc.</i> , to, up to, for, near; <i>with numerals frequently an adv.</i> , about.	quot , <i>indeclinable rel. and interrog. adj.</i> , as many, as many as; how many?
Graecus , Graeca , Graecum , Greek, Grecian.	sexāgintā , <i>indeclinable numeral</i> , sixty.
nōminātim , <i>adv.</i> , by name, individually, expressly.	summa , summae , <i>f.</i> , total, sum, whole.
nōnāgintā , <i>indeclinable numeral</i> , ninety.	tabula , tabulae , <i>f.</i> , board, writing tablet, list, record.
quattuordecim , <i>indeclinable numeral</i> , fourteen.	trecentī , trecentae , trecenta , three hundred.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Interrogative Adjective. (2) Agreement of a Verb with the Predicate. (3) Predicate Genitive of Description. (4) Ablative of the Starting-point. (5) Descriptive Clause of Actuality. (6) Indirect Question.

A. (1) 148, *b*; (2) 316, *b*; (3) 345; (4) 427, 1; (5) 535; (6) 573.

B. (1) 90, 2; (2) 254, 3; (3) 198, 3; (4) 229, 1, *b*; (5) 283, 1; (6) 300, 1.

G. (1) 106; (2) 211, R. 1 (*c*); (3) 366; (4) 390, 2; (5) 631, 1; (6) 467.

HB. (1) 275, 4; (2) 332; (3) 355; (4) 451; (5) 521, 1; (6) 537, *b*.

H. (1) 511; (2) 390; (3) 447; (4) 462, 4; (5) 591, 1; (6) 649, II.

TRANSLATE: Tabulae Helvētiōrum litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae sunt. Tabulae ad Caesarem relātae sunt. Quī numerus domō exiit? Ratiō cōnfecta erat quī numerus

domō exisset. Erant capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia ducenta sexāgintā tria. Erant Tulingōrum mīlia trīgintā sex, Latobrigōrum mīlia quattuordecim, Rauracōrum mīlia vīgintī tria, Boiōrum mīlia trīgintā duo. Ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo arma ferre poterant. Summa fuērunt ad mīlia trecenta sexāgintā octō. Mīlia centum et decem domum rediērunt.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXIX

CHAPTER XXX

VOCABULARY

commūnis , commūne , <i>adj.</i> , common, general, public.	permittō , permittere , per- mīsī , permissus , intrust, permit, allow.
cōnsensus , cōnsensūs , <i>m.</i> , agreement, consent.	sanciō , sancire , sānxī , sānc- tus , make sacred, make bind- ing, ordain.
domicilium , domicilī , <i>n.</i> , dwelling, abode.	stipendiārius , stipendiāria , stipendiārium , tributary, de- pendent.
flōrens , <i>Gen.</i> , flōrentis , <i>adj.</i> , flourishing, prosperous, in- fluential.	tametsī , <i>conj.</i> , although.
fructuōsus , fructuōsa , frūc- tuōsum , fertile, fruitful.	terra , terrae , <i>f.</i> , land.
grātulor , grātulāri , grātulā- tus , congratulate. <i>Dative.</i>	ūsus , ūsūs , <i>m.</i> , use, practice, experience, advantage.
opportūnus , opportūna , op- portūnum , favorable, ad- vantagous.	

IDIOMS

ab aliquō poenās repetere, inflict punishment on some one.
ex ūsū alicuius, to the advantage of some one.
flōrentissimae rēs, the height of prosperity.

SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Subjective Genitive. (2) Objective Genitive. (3) Dative of the Concrete Object for Which. (4) Dative with Compounds. (5) Object of *Utor*, etc. (6) Ablative of Attendant Circumstances. (7) Volitive Substantive Clause. (8) Adversative Clauses. (9) Subjunctive by Attraction. (10) The Accusative Supine.

A. (1) 343, 1; (2) 348; (3) 382, 2; (4) 370; (5) 410; (6) 419; (7) 563; (8) 527, c; (9) 593; (10) 509.

B. (1) 199; (2) 200; (3) 191, 1; (4) 187, III; (5) 218, 1; (6) 221; (7) 295, 1; (8) 309, 2; (9) 324; (10) 340, 1.

G. (1) 333, 1; (2) 363, 2; (3) 356; (4) 347; (5) 407; (6) 410; (7) 546, 2; (8) 604; (9) 663; (10) 435.

HB. (1) 344; (2) 354; (3) 361; (4) 376; (5) 429; (6) 422; (7) 502, 3; (8) 582, 8; (9) 539; (10) 618.

H. (1) 440, 1; (2) 440, 2; (3) 425, 3; (4) 429; (5) 477; (6) 473, 3; (7) 565; (8) 586; (9) 652; (10) 633.

TRANSLATE: Ea res ex usu populi Romani accidit. Tametsi ab Helvetiis poenas repetisti, tamen ea res ex usu terrae Galliae accidit. Intellegimus eam rem ex usu terrae Galliae accidisse. Legati Caesari gratulantem dixerunt intellegere sese eam rem ex usu populi Romani accidisse. Eo consilio domos suas Helvetii reliquerunt, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent. Domos suas reliquerunt uti imperio potirentur. Locum domicilio deligerent quem fructuosissimum iudicaverint. Domos reliquerunt, uti domicilio locum deligerent quem fructuosissimum iudicassent. Galli petierunt uti sibi concilium indicere liceret. Habemus quasdam res, quas ab te petere volumus. Ne quis enuntiaret inter se sanxerunt.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXX.





C. IULI CAESARIS
BELLI GALLICI
LIBER PRIMUS

Note to the Student.—Read carefully the Summary in English each time before attempting to translate the Latin.

Caesar names the main divisions of "Gaul as a whole." The bravest are the Belgians, who are least subject to the refining influences of civilization and are in constant touch with the fierce Germans, their neighbors on the east.

I. GALLIA est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garūnna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana 5 dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; 10 proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

The Helvetians are braver than the other Gauls and carry on constant warfare, both offensive and defensive, with the Germans. The boundaries of the three main divisions of "Gaul as a whole,"—Gaul, Belgium, Aquitania.

Quā dē causā Helvétīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliis cum Germānīs

contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

Eorum una pars, quam Gallōs obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodanō; continetur Garunnā flumine, Oceanō, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garunnā flumine ad Pyrēnaeos montēs et eam partem Oceanī, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum solis et septentrionēs.

The Helvetians were persuaded by an ambitious nobleman to migrate from Switzerland and seek wider fields in other parts of Gaul, where they would have better opportunities to wage war with other tribes. Thus they believed they could establish their rule over all Gaul.



HELVETIA

II. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilitissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M. Rīsōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et civitatī persuāsit, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus

praestarent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri.



MOUNT JURA NEAR THE SUMMIT

Id hōc facilius iīs persuāsit quod undique loci nātūrā
 Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātis-
 simō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs
 dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter
 Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine
 Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

Extent of the Helvetian territory.

His rēbus fiēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus
 facile fīnitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte
 hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō
 multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque
 fortitūdinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī
 in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem
 CLXXX patēbant.

The Helvetians determine to procure wagons and supplies for their journey. It will take them two years to get ready.

III. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

They send Orgetorix on an embassy to establish friendly relations with the neighboring states. On this embassy he forms a plot with two other chieftains to secure for themselves the mastery over all Gaul.

Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorīx dux dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnū in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnū in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerit; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Diviciaci, quī eō tempore princīpātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātrimonium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quā tōtius Galliae plūrimū Helvētīi possent; sē suis cōpiīs suoque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. Hāc orātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse sperant.

Orgetorix is brought to trial for treason, the penalty being death by fire. He escapes from the trial by unlawful means. The magistrates set about to enforce the law, and Orgetorix commits suicide.

IV. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūtiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur. Diē cōstitutā causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia 5 decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suos, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrā- 10 tūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quā ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

Orgetorix's treachery and death did not change the Helvetians' determination to migrate. To prevent any inclination to turn back, they destroy their homes and even the grain, except what they were to take with them. They prevail upon some neighboring tribes to adopt their plan and join them; the Boii they admit as allies.

V. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. 15 Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrāti sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcūm portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia periculā su- 20 beunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidis suis vicisque exustis, ūnā cum iīs proficiscantur; Boiōs-

que, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum transierant Nōreiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

Of the two routes possible for the Helvetians one, north of the Rhone, would lead through the difficult Pas de l'Écluse, where the river flows through a gap in the Jura Mountains; the other lay through the Roman province, which they could enter by crossing to the south bank of the river.



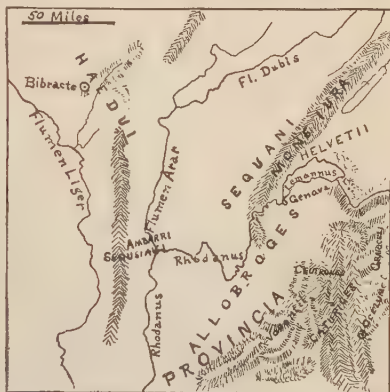
PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE, looking downstream

VI. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus
 5 domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et
 difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix
 quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus
 impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alte-
 rum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expe-

dītius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nōn nullis locīs vadō trānsītur.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstīmābant, vel vī coāctūrōs, ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis diem dicunt,

quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs 20 erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōsulibus.



HELVETIA ON THE WEST

Caesar is still in the vicinity of Rome, but on hearing of the intended inroad of the Helvetians, he rushes to his province and takes measures to prevent it. The Helvetians send ambassadors asking him to permit them to pass through the province.

VII. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvin-
ciae tōtī quam maximum potest militum numerum im-
perat,—erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna,—
pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī.

faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum milītēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Id. Aprīl. reverterentur.

5

With all his available troops Caesar fortifies the left bank of the Rhone for a distance of nineteen Roman miles by constructing walls and ditches and redoubts wherever there were no natural bluffs to prevent an enemy from crossing.

VIII. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, milīti-busque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, .



THE RHONE JUST ABOVE CHANCY

Narrow and deep; high bluffs; no fortifications needed here. Pas de l'Écluse in the distance.

quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dīvidit, milia passuum

xviii mīrum in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

When the Helvetians were finally told that he would not permit them to go through the province, they tried unsuccessfully to force a way across.

- 5 Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare: et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētīī eā



LOOKING UP THE RHONE JUST BELOW CHANCY
One of the places where the Helvetians tried to cross.

spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, 10 aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī. operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

What

The only other way would take them through the narrow pass in the land of the Sequanians. Through the intercession of Dumnorix, who has reasons of his own for undertaking the matter, they get permission to pass through this territory; and both nations take and give hostages as a pledge of good faith. (These hostages were generally princes or princesses, who were to be put to death in case their nation violated its pledge.)

IX. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invitīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgē Haeduū mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimū poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitatē Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat, et cupiditatē rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trāseant.

Caesar's spies bring information concerning these plans. Such a migration would be dangerous to the Roman interests in Gaul. Realizing that the forces at hand are too small to cope with such a horde of barbarians, Caesar leaves his most able officer in charge and hurries into Cisalpine Gaul, calls out the seventh, eighth, and ninth legions from winter quarters, enrolls additional legions, and with these troops rushes back to farther Gaul, repelling numerous attacks of the mountaineers on the way.

X. Caesarī nūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs,

populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs finitimōs habēret. ~

Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliā magnīs itinēribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs edūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliā per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit.

Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs locīs superi-
10 ōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocon-
tiorum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exer-
15 citum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

The Helvetians had already passed into central Gaul and were making havoc of the fields of the Haeduan, who were the most loyal allies of the Romans in Gaul. On hearing their complaints, Caesar resolves to take prompt action.

XI. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē
20 suaeque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōsesse, ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint.

25 Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessariī et cōsanguinei Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque

habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōsūptīs in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent.

5

After getting information about the movements of the Helvetians, Caesar leaves camp soon after midnight with a suitable force and surprises an isolated division of the enemy.

XII. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpi- 10 ārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopinantēs adgressus magnam partem eōrum concīdit; 15 reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt.

This very clan, which he surprised, had vanquished a Roman army in 107 B.C. and inflicted great humiliation on it.

Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvītās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium 20 cōsulem interfēcerať et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immortalīum, quae pars cīvītātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās 25 iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum,

L. Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio, quo Cassium, interfecerant.

After this battle Caesar bridges the Arar in order to overtake the rest of the Helvetians. Startled by his rapid movements, they send ambassadors to treat with him. They are ready for peace or war, but prefer peace and express a willingness to go and settle wherever Caesar wishes.

XIII. Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arari faciendum curat atque ita exercitum traducit. Helvetii repentinò eius adventum commoti, cum id, quod ipsi diebus xx aegerrimè confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno diè fecisse intellegent, legatos ad eum mittunt; cuius legationis Diviciò princeps fuit, qui bello Cassianò dux Helvetiorum fuerat.

10 Is ita cum Caesare egit: Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae vir-

15 tutis Helvetiorum.

"Don't have too much confidence in your prowess just because you attacked a helpless part of our people. The Helvetian way is to depend on valor, not trickery. Beware! In after years the place where we shall have taken a stand against you may be famous as the place where a Roman army was destroyed."

Quod improvísò unum pagum adortus esset, cum ii, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtutis tribueret aut ipsos despiceret; se ita a patribus maioribusque suis didicisse,

20 ut magis virtute contenderent, quam dolo aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret ut is locus, ubi consti-

tissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

Caesar's reply to the ambassadors: "I remember those misfortunes of the Roman people: and I am as much the more indignant as they were the less deserved. The state was taken off its guard; for it had wronged no one and had no grounds to fear hostilities."

XIV. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnsocius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret.

"Your recent wrongdoings deserve punishment even if I could forget the former ones. Your insolent boasting does not make me more kindly disposed to you. The gods sometimes grant a limited prosperity to wicked men whom they intend to punish."

Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriarū, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

The conditions of peace are hostages and apologies. Divico's answer: The Helvetians are not in the habit of giving hostages.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē

iniūriis, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum.

Diviciō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suis institūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōsuērint; 5 eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

The Helvetians move. Caesar follows them, using his cavalry to keep track of them. The rear guard of the enemy becomes bold, but Caesar steadily refuses battle.

XV. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum 10 sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen insecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam 15 multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīdīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīn- 20 decim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus passuum interesset.

Caesar has trouble in getting supplies. The Haeduians had asked him to aid them against the Helvetians and had promised supplies in the name of the state. But they kept giving excuses instead of grain.

XVI. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent publicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter

frīgora quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat, proptereā ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī 5 Helvētīi āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī; cōferri, comportārī, adesse dīcere.

Finally Caesar summons the chiefs and chides them for their indifference and treachery.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum 10 prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpīam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātūī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, 15 tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab iīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

The leaders of the anti-Roman party among the Haeduanans are doing all that is possible to prevent Caesar from getting supplies. The chief magistrate confesses his inability to suppress their activities.

XVII. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, 20 quod antea tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōn nullōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiosā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrēre, nē frūmentum cōferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum 25

Galliae obtinere nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitare debere quā, si Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ereptūrī. Ab iisdem nostra cōsilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus enūtiārī; hōs ā se coercērī nōn posse. Quā etiam, quod necessariam rem coactus Caesarī enūtiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

Caesar privately inquires about the behavior of Dumnorix and learns that he has great influence and farms the revenues. (Among the Haeduians the revenues, together with the privilege of collecting them, were sold to the highest bidder; these "farmers of the revenue" made great profits by collecting much more from the people than they had paid to the state.)

- 10 XVIII. Caesar hāc orātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Diviciaci frātre, designārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat. Dicit liberior atque audācius.
- 15 Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vērā: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audaciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rerum novarum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēpta habēre,
- 20 proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō.

The sources of Dumnorix's great power: wealth, a large body of retainers, personal alliances with powerful men in other states.

Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē



SCENE IN A ROMAN CAMP

habere, neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illiē nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxorem habere, sororem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātēs conlocāsse.

*Dumnorix favors the Helvetians and is treacherous to the Romans.
He has good reason for this.*

Favere et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam adfinitatem, odisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiaē atque honoris sit restitūtus. 10 Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre.

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium 15 equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque eius equitibus — nam equitātūī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat; — eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

20

Notwithstanding these treasonable acts of Dumnorix, Caesar hesitated to punish him for fear of hurting the feelings of Dumnorix's brother Diviciacus, whose fidelity to Caesar and the Roman cause in Gaul could not be doubted. Caesar confers with Diviciacus through a trusted interpreter.

XIX. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāssēt, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et civitātis,

sed etiam Inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitatē animadvertere iubēret.

- 5 Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntatē, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam, nē eius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quie-
- 10 quam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in
- 15 conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognītā statuāt vel cīvitatē statuere inbeat.

Diviciacus confesses that his brother makes him lots of trouble on his own account as well as on account of the Romans. But he fears to have him punished and begs Caesar not to do so.

- XX. Diviciācus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem com-
- 20 plexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vērā, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per sē crēvisset;
- 25 quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset

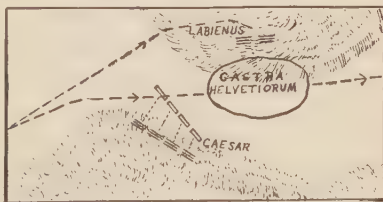
cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēmīnem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.

Caesar is moved by Diviciacus's tears. (Perhaps, too, he thought it unwise at this critical time to arouse the resentment of the Haeduan by inflicting punishment on their favorite leader.) He forgives Dumnorix's past as a favor to his brother. Nevertheless Caesar intends to watch Dumnorix closely.

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōsōlātus rogat finem 5
ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, utī et rē pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātre adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvītās querātur, prōpōnit; monet 10
ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

By means of scouting parties Caesar obtains information about the enemy and the surrounding country. He arranges a plan of battle and hastens toward the enemy.

XXI. Eōdem diē ab explorātōribus certior factus 15
hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsius castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra mōntis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, quī cognōscerent, mīsīt.



20

Renūtiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. La-

biēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus, quī iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsilī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, 5 ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris perītissimus habēbatur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explorātōribus praemittitur.

Caesar's plan was working well, when a timorous officer brought him unreliable information about the movements of the enemy, which led Caesar to believe that his plans had failed. Caesar assumes the defensive. Through scouts he discovers the error.

XXII. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō 10 tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivīs comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dicit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī; 15 id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit.

Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra 20 vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn 25 vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

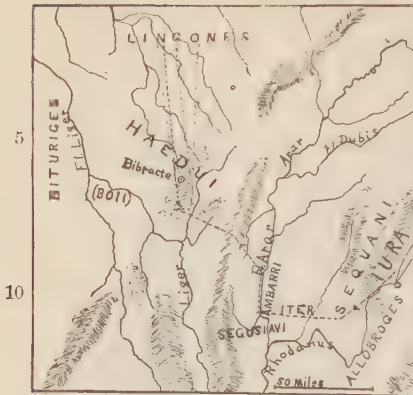


GALLIC SOLDIER, STANDARD-BEARER, AND OFFICER

Lack of supplies compels Caesar to change his plans. The enemy takes the offensive.

XXIII. Postrīdiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum xviii aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; itaque iter s ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit.

Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre



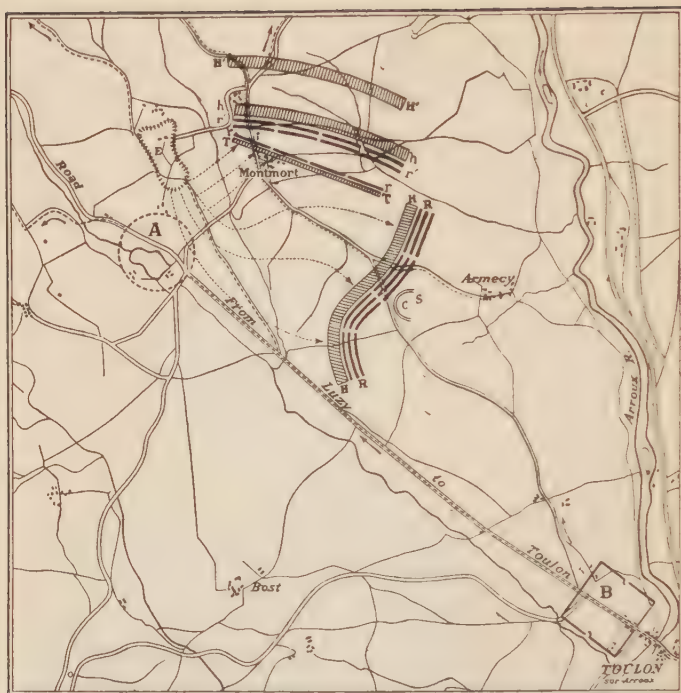
CENTRAL GAUL

perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātis proelium nōn commīsissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō

15 agmine īsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.



From marching up this valley the Helvetii turned back to attack Caesar.



Milia passuum
0 1 2
THE BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII.

- | | |
|---|---|
| A. Helvetian camp on morning of battle. | r'. Roman 1st and 2d lines facing Helvetii. |
| B. Roman camp on morning of battle. | rr. Roman 3d line facing Boii and Tulingi. |
| S. Summit of hill of Armecy. | hh. Helvetii renewing attack. |
| C. Intrenchment made by recruits. | E. Helvetian baggage in park. |
| RR. Four veteran legions in line of battle. | — Roman line of march. |
| HH. Helvetii in first attack. | ----- Helvetian line of march. |
| U'H'. Helvetii in retreat. | |
| TT. Boii and Tulingi. | |

Caesar arranges his forces for battle. He occupies an advantageous position, nevertheless the Helvetians advance to the attack.

XXIV. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsīt. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat et omnia auxilia conlocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum ab iīs quī in superioriōre aciē cōstitērant mūniri iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī, cōfertissimā aciē reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.



View from Caesar's position on the hill, showing the ground over which the Helvetians passed in making the attack.

Caesar compels all his officers to dismount. His men meet the charge of the enemy in the usual way by hurling their javelins and then charging with drawn swords. The line of the Gauls was so dense that their shields overlapped and were in many instances fastened together by the javelins of the Romans.

XXV. Caesar, primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Milites ē locō superiōre pilīs missis facile hostium phalan-
5 gem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum fēcērunt.



Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs unō ietū pilōrum trānsfixis et conligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere
10 neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō bracciō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre.

The Gauls retreat to a mountain. As the Romans follow, the Boii and Tulingi attempt a flank movement, and the Helvetians renew the attack.

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille passūs, eō sē recipere coepē-
15 runt.

Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, quī hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab

latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre, et id cōspicātī Helvētī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt; prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submōtis resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret. 5

After a desperate battle the Romans are successful. The flight of the enemy continues night and day. Caesar warns the neighboring tribes that he will treat them as enemies, if they give aid to the Helvetians.

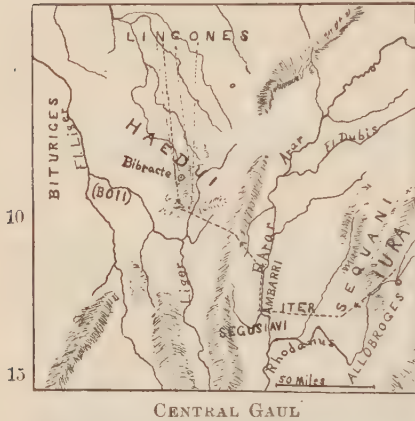


HILL TO WHICH THE HELVETIANS RETREATED

From the position of Caesar's right wing.

XXVI. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum 10

pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō petuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est,



proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgeto-

rīgis filia atque ūnus ē filiīs captus est.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfu-
 20 ērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonū diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque
 25 mīsīt, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

The Helvetians in great destitution humbly submit to Caesar. While the details of the surrender are being carried out, some of the Helvetians attempt to escape into Germany.

XXVII. Helvētiū omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in

itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppli-
citerque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō
locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iussisset,
pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma,
servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposeit.

5



SITE OF THE FINAL STRUGGLE AROUND THE BAGGAGE

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā
circiter hominum mīlia **vi** eius pāgī, quī Verbigenus
appellātur, sive timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppli-
ciō adficerentur, sive spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā
multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut
omnīnō ignōrārī posse exīstimārent, primā nocte ē castrīs
Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum
contendērunt.

These fugitives, brought back by Caesar's orders, are put to death or sold into slavery. The rest of the Helvetians and their allies he orders to return to Switzerland and rebuild their towns and villages. But he permits the Boii to remain with the Haeduan.

XXVIII. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et reducerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs
5 in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant,
10 restituere iussit.

Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitatem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et finitimī Galliae
15 prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in finibus suis conlocārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque condiciōnem, atque ipsi erant, recēpērunt.

The census before and after the attempted migration.

20 XXIX. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātīm ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm quot puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum om-
25 nium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium cclxiii, Tulingōrum mīlium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiiii,

Rauracōrum xxiii, Boiōrum xxxii; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo.

Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia ccclxviii. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x. 5

After the war the Gallic chieftains assemble to congratulate Caesar and take measures to enlist his aid against a common foe.

XXX. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitatū, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt:

Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetisset, 10 tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex 15 omnī Galliā opportunissimum ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitatēs stīpendiāriās habērent.

Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret; sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab 20 eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre iūrاندō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

VOCABULARY

Numbers preceded by G. refer to chapters in the Gallic War, where the word is given in full in the special vocabulary.

- A.**, abbreviation for **Aulus**, -ī, *praenomen of Postumius*. 68.
- ā**, **ab**, *prep. with abl.*, from, away from; *with passive verbs*, by.
- abdō**, -dere, -didī, -ditus, put away, remove, hide. G. 12.
- abdūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead away, take away. G. 11.
- abeō**, -ire, -iī, -itūrus, go away, go forth, depart. 61.
- abstineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentus (**absteneō**), hold back, refrain. G. 22.
- absum**, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, be away from, be absent, be wanting. 47.
- ac**, same as **atque**, and.
- accēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (**ad-cēdō**), approach, advance, come to, be added. 56.
- acceptus**, -a, -um, acceptable, liked. G. 3.
- accidō**, -ere, -cidi (**ad-cadō**), fall upon, come to, happen, *with dat.* 76.
- accipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (**ad-capiō**), receive, accept, get. 42.
- accurrō**, -ere, -curri and -cucurri, -cursūrus (**ad-currō**), run up to, hasten to. G. 22.
- accūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, accuse, blame, find fault with. G. 16.
- acer**, ācris, ācre, *adj.*, keen, sharp, active. 27.
- aciēs**, -eī, *f.*, sharp edge, battle line, keen glance (of the eyes). 70.
- ācriter**, *adv.*, fiercely, sharply. 10.
- ad**, *prep. with acc.*, to, up to, near; *with gerund.*, for; *with numerals*, an *adv.*, about. 11.
- addūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead to, bring, induce. G. 3.
- adferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bring, render. 54.
- adficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (**ad-faciō**), affect, afflict, visit with. G. 2.
- adfinitās**, -tātis, *f.*, relationship, alliance. G. 18.
- adgredior**, -ī, -gressus (**ad-gradior**), go towards, march against, attack. G. 12.
- adhibeō**, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus (**ad-habeō**), call in, apply, use. G. 20.
- admīror**, -ārī, -ātus, be surprised, wonder at, admire. G. 14.
- admittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus, let go, commit, allow. G. 22.
- adorior**, -irī, -ortus, attack, assault. G. 13.

- adsciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scītus, attach, receive, admit. G. 5.
- adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be present, stand by, support. 73.
- adulēscientia, -ae, *f.*, youth. G. 20.
- adventus, -ūs, *m.*, a coming, arrival. 74.
- adversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, opposite, unfavorable. G. 18.
- advertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, turn towards, turn against, turn. G. 24.
- Aebutius, -ī, *m.*, Titus Aebutius, a Roman general. 68.
- aedificium, -ī, *n.*, a building. 13.
- aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, build, construct, 51.
- aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick. 57.
- aegrē, *adv.*, feebly, with difficulty, hardly. G. 13.
- Aemilius, -ī, *m.*, one of Caesar's minor officers. G. 23.
- aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make equal, equalize. G. 25.
- aes, aeris, *n.*, metal, copper, bronze; money; aes aliēnum, debt, debts. 71.
- aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. 24.
- aetās, -tātis, *f.*, age, time of life. 60.
- ager, agrī, *m.*, land, field. 12.
- agmen, agminis, *n.*, army on the march, column, line. 64.
- agō, -ere, -egī, -actus, drive, do. 21.
- agricola, -ae, *m.*, farmer. 1.
- Alba Longa, *f.*, an ancient city of Italy. 35.
- Albānus, -a, -um, belonging to Alba Longa, Alban; an Alban. 35.
- albus, -a, -um, white. 2.
- aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another, another's. 71.
- aliquis, aliquid (-quod), some, body, some one, something; some, any. 71.
- aliquot, *indecl.*, several, some. 69.
- alius, -a, -ud, another, other. 47.
- Allia, -ae, *f.*, a little stream flowing into the Tiber on the east side, eleven miles north of Rome. 77.
- Allobrogēs, -um, *Acc.*, -as *m.*, name of a Gallic tribe near Lake Geneva. G. 6.
- alō, -ere, alui, altus, nourish, support, keep. G. 18.
- Alpēs, -ium, *f.*, the Alps. 76.
- alter, -era, -erum, the other (of two), the second; alter . . . alter, *correl.*, the one . . . the other. 47.
- altitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, height, depth. G. 8.
- altus, -a, -um, high, deep, tall. 16.
- Ambarri, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of Gauls related to the Haeduan. G. 11.
- amicitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship. G. 3.
- amicus, -ī, *m.*, friend. 4.
- āmittō, -ere, āmisi, āmissus, lose. 62.
- amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, love. 6.
- amor, -ōris, *m.*, love, affection. G. 20.
- amplē, *adv.*, largely, fully; amplius, more. G. 15.
- an, *conj.* used in questions, or. 63.
- anceps, *Gen.*, ancipitis, twofold, doubtful. G. 26.
- Ancus Mārcius, fourth king of Rome. 50.
- angustiae, -ārum, *f.*, narrowness, narrow pass, difficulties. G. 9.
- angustus, -a, -um, narrow. 3.

animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus,
attend to, notice, punish. G. 19.

animus, -ī, m., mind, courage. 16.

Aniō, Aniēnis, m., a river flowing
into the Tiber a few miles north
of Rome. 54.

annus, -ī, m., a year. 16.

annuus, -a, -um, for a year, annual. G. 16.

ānser, -eris, m., a goose. 78.

ante, adv. and prep. with acc., before. 41.

anteā, adv., before, previously. G. 17.

antīquus, -a, -um, old, ancient. G. 18.

apertus, -a, -um, open, exposed, unprotected. G. 25.

appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call, name. 34.

Appius, -ī, m., name of a Roman. 69.

Aprilis, -e, adj., of April. G. 6.

apud, prep. with acc., with, in the presence of, among, at, near. 69.

aqua, -ae, f., water. 5.

Aquileia, -ae, f., a city of Cisalpine Gaul on the Adriatic Sea. G. 10.

Aquitānī, -ōrum, m., the Aquitanians, a people living in the southwest part of Gaul. G. 1.

Aquitānia, -ae, f., the country of the Aquitanians. G. 1.

Arar, -aris, m., a river flowing into the Rhone at Lyons; modern Saône. G. 12.

arbitror, -āri, -ātus, judge, think. G. 2.

arceō, -ēre, arcuī, trans., keep off, keep away. 16.

Ardea, -ae, f., a city of ancient

Italy, twenty miles south of Rome. 78.

Ariovistus, -ī, m., a German king. 28.

arma, -ōrum, n., implements, arms, weapons. 42.

armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, arm, equip. 13.

Arrūns, -untis, m., given name of one of the Tarquins. 64.

ars, artis, f., art, skill. 33.

arx, arcis, f., a citadel; at Rome it was one of the summits of the Capitoline hill. 77.

ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsus, climb up, mount, ascend. G. 21.

ascēnsus, -ūs, m., ascent, acclivity. G. 21.

atque or ac, conj., and also, and; as, than. 10.

attingō, -ere, attingī, attāctus (adtangō), touch, reach, border upon. G. 1.

auctōritās, -tātis, f., authority, influence. G. 3.

audācia, -ae, f., boldness, daring. G. 18.

audācter, adv., boldly. 29.

audāx, Gen., audācis, bold, daring. 30.

audeō, -ēre, ausus, semi-dep., dare. 69.

audiō, -ire, -ivī, -ītus, hear. 30.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, trans., increase, enlarge. 25.

aut, conj., or; either . . . or. 13.

autem, conj., but, moreover, on the other hand. G. 2.

auxilium, -ī, n., aid, help, reinforcements; *pl.*, auxiliary forces. 29.

- Aventīnus**, -ī, *m.*, one of the hills of Rome. 55.
- āvertō**, -ere, **āvertī**, **āversus**, turn away, estrange. G. 16.
- avus**, -ī, *m.*, grandfather. 11.
- Belgae**, -ārum, *m.*, the Belgians, a people living in the northeast part of Gaul. G. 1.
- bellicōsus**, -a, -um, warlike. G. 10.
- bello**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, fight, make war. G. 2.
- bellum**, -ī, *n.*, war. 24.
- bene**, *adv.*, well. 3.
- beneficium**, -ī, *n.*, service, favor, kindness. G. 9.
- Bibracte**, -tis, *n.*, chief town of the Haeduan, modern Mont Beuvray. G. 23.
- bīdum**, -ī, *n.*, a period of two days, two days. G. 23.
- biennium**, -ī, *n.*, two years. G. 3.
- bipertitō** (or **bipartitō**), *adv.*, in two divisions. G. 25.
- Biturīgēs**, -um, *m.*, a tribe of Gauls west of the Haeduan. G. 18.
- Boīi**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Celtic tribe. G. 5.
- bonitās**, -tātis, *f.*, goodness, excellence, fertility (of the soil). G. 28.
- bonus**, -a, -um, good. 2.
- bracchium**, -ī, *n.*, arm. G. 25.
- brevis**, -e, short. 27.
- Brūtus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman. 59.
- C.**, abbreviation for **Cāius** (**Gāius**), a Roman praenomen. 24.
- cadō**, -ere, **cecidī**, **cāsūrus**, fall. 28.
- caedēs**, -is, *f.*, a killing, slaughter, carnage. 54.
- Caesar**, -aris, *m.*, a Roman name. 24.
- calamitās**, -tātis, *f.*, disaster, misfortune. G. 12.
- Camillus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman general. 78.
- canis**, -is, *m.* and *f.*, a dog, watch-dog. 78.
- capiō**, -ere, **cēpī**, **captus**, take, seize, catch. 31.
- Capitōlium**, -ī, *n.*, one of the hills of Rome, the Capitoline. 55.
- captīvus**, -ī, *m.*, captive, prisoner. 7.
- caput**, **capitis**, *n.*, head. 20.
- carcer**, -eris, *m.*, prison. 51.
- carrus**, -ī, *m.*, cart, wagon. G. 3.
- cārus**, -a, -um, dear, precious, valuable. 74.
- Cassiānus**, -a, -um, of Cassius, with Cassius. G. 13.
- Cassius**, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Cassius, consul 107 B.C. G. 7.
- castellum**, -ī, *n.*, fort, redoubt, stronghold. G. 8.
- Casticus**, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Sequani. G. 3.
- Castor**, -oris, *m.*, a hero of the olden times; he and his twin-brother Pollux were worshiped as gods at ancient Rome. 68.
- castra**, -ōrum, *n.*, camp. 24.
- cāsus**, -ūs, *m.*, accident, chance. (i. 12.)
- Catamantāloedēs**, -is, *m.*, a chief of the Sequani. G. 3.
- Caturīgēs**, -um, an Alpine tribe of Gauls. G. 10.
- causa**, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, pre-text, case (at law); *abl.*, **causā**.

- preceded by a gen., for the sake of.* 73.
- caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus**, be on one's guard, guard against. G. 14.
- celer, celeris, celere**, swift. 27.
- celeritās, -tātis, f.**, speed. 21.
- celeriter, adv.**, quickly. 14.
- Celtae, -ārum, m.**, the Celts or Gauls. G. 1.
- cēseō, -ēre, -suī, -sus**, estimate, give one's opinion, decree, determine, think. 63.
- cēnsus, -ūs, m.**, counting, numbering, census. 57.
- centum, indecl. num.**, one hundred. G. 26.
- certus, -a, -um**, sure, certain, trustworthy. **Certiōrem facere**, to inform. G. 7.
- Centronēs, -um, m.**, an Alpine tribe of Gauls. G. 10.
- cibārius, -a, -um**, pertaining to food. **Cibāria**, provisions. G. 5.
- cibus, -ī, m.**, food. 5.
- circiter, adv. and prep. with acc.**, around, about, near. G. 15.
- circuitus, -ūs, m.**, roundabout way, circuit. G. 21.
- circum, adv. and prep. with acc.**, around, about. G. 10.
- circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus**, set around, surround. 57.
- circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus**, surround. G. 25.
- circus, -ī, m.**, circus, a place for celebrating games and holding contests. 55.
- citerior, -ius, comp. adj.**, nearer, hither; used of the Gallic province nearer Rome, Cisalpine Gaul. G. 10.
- citrā, adv. and prep. with acc.**, this side, on this side of. G. 12.
- civis, -is, m. and f.**, a citizen. 23.
- civitās, -tātis, f.**, citizenship, a state. 33.
- clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, shout. 11.
- clāmor, -ōris, m.**, a shout. 26.
- clārus, -a, -um**, clear, bright, illustrious, famous. 16.
- claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus**, shut, close, shut up. 77.
- cliēns, -entis, m.**, a dependant, vassal. G. 4.
- Clūsīnus, -a, -um**, of Clusium. 65.
- Cocles, -itis, m.**, cognomen of a Roman. 65.
- coēmō, -ere, coēmī, coēemptus**, buy up, purchase. G. 3.
- coepī, coepisse, coeptus (no pres.)**, began, have begun. 65.
- coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**, confine, restrain. G. 17.
- cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitus**, learn, ascertain, recognize; *perf.*, know. 39.
- cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus**, collect, force, compel. 22.
- cohortor, -ārī, -ātus**, encourage, exhort. G. 25.
- Collātianus, -ī, m.**, a Roman. 61.
- collis, -is, m.**, hill. 26.
- colō, -ere, coluī, cultus**, till, cultivate, honor, worship. 76.
- combūrō, -ere, -bussī, -bustus**, burn, burn up. G. 5.
- commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, mention. G. 14.
- commeō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus**, go to and fro, visit. G. 1.
- committō, -ere, -misī, -missus**, join, trust, allow, commit. G. 13.

- commodō**, *adv.*, advantageously, conveniently, readily. G. 25.
- commonefaciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, remind, admonish. G. 19.
- commoveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move, stir, disturb, alarm. G. 13.
- communiō**, -ire, -īvī, -ītus, fortify. G. 8.
- commūnis**, -e, *adj.*, common, general, public. G. 30.
- commūtatiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, a change. G. 14.
- commūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, change, exchange. G. 23.
- comparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, prepare, get ready, procure. G. 3.
- comperiō**, -īre, comperi, comper-tus, learn, discover. G. 22.
- complector**, completī, complexus, clasp, embrace. G. 20.
- compleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, fill, fill up. G. 24.
- complūrēs**, complūra, and complūria, many, several. G. 8.
- comportō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, collect, bring in. G. 16.
- cōnātum**, -ī, *n.*, an attempt, undertaking. G. 3.
- cōnātus**, -ūs, *m.*, an attempt. G. 8.
- concēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *intr.* with *dat.*, retire, withdraw from, yield to; *trans.*, concede, allow, give up. 76.
- concidō**, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus (con-caedō), cut up, cut down, kill. G. 12.
- conciliō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, win over, secure, procure. G. 3.
- concilium**, -ī, *n.*, a meeting, council. G. 18.
- concursum**, -ūs, *m.*, a running together, onset, charge. G. 8.
- condiciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, agreement, condition, state. G. 28.
- condōnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, pardon, forgive. G. 20.
- condūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, bring together, collect, hire. G. 4.
- cōnferō**, -ferre, contulī, -lātus, bring together, collect, compare, ascribe, defer. G. 16.
- cōnfertus**, -a, -um, crowded, dense. G. 24.
- cōnficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, complete, accomplish, prepare, make. G. 3.
- cōnfidō**, -ere, cōnfisus, *semi-dep.*, trust, rely on, believe. G. 23.
- cōnfirmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, strengthen, establish, declare, assure. G. 3.
- cōnflagrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, burn, be consumed by fire. 43.
- coniciō or coiciō**, -ere, coniectī, -iectus, (con-iaciō), throw, cast, hurl. 66.
- coniungō**, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, join, connect, unite. 51.
- coniūratiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, conspiracy. G. 2.
- conligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bind together, fasten together. G. 25.
- conlocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, place, arrange, give. G. 18.
- conloquor**, -loquī, -locūtus, talk, confer, hold a conversation. 63.
- cōnor**, -ārī, -ātus, try, attempt. 48.
- conquīrō**, -ere, -quīsivī, -quīsītus

- (**con-quaerō**), search for, hunt up. G. 27.
- cōnsanguineus**, -a, -um, akin; *as noun*, kinsman. G. 11.
- cōnsciscō**, -ere, -scivī, -scītus, resolve, take upon one's self; **mortem sibi cōnsciscere**, commit suicide. G. 4.
- cōnscius**, -a, -um, knowing, conscious, aware of. G. 14.
- cōnscribō**, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus, enroll, enlist. G. 10.
- cōnsēnsus**, -ūs, *m.*, agreement, consent. G. 30.
- cōnsequor**, -sequī, -secūtus, follow, overtake, secure. G. 13.
- Cōnsidius**, -ī, *m.*, one of Caesar's officers. G. 21.
- cōnsidō**, -ere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, sit down, halt, encamp. G. 21.
- cōnsilium**, -ī, *n.*, council, counsel, plan, stratagem. 39.
- cōnsistō**, -ere, -stitī, gain a footing, stand, halt, consist of. 78.
- cōnsōlor**, -ārī, -ātus, comfort, console. G. 20.
- cōnspectus**, -ūs, *m.*, sight. G. 11.
- cōnspicor**, -ārī, -ātus, catch sight of, see. G. 25.
- cōnstituō**, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtus, place, establish, appoint, resolve, determine. G. 3.
- cōnsuēscō**, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, become accustomed; *perf.*, be accustomed, be wont. G. 14.
- cōnsul**, -ulis, *m.*, a consul, the chief Roman magistrate. 20.
- cōnsūmō**, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmp-tus, waste, consume, destroy. G. 11.
- contendō**, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, strive, hasten, contend. 35.
- continenter**, *adv.*, continuously, continually. G. 1.
- contineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (**conteneō**), keep together, restrain, bound. G. 1.
- contrā**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, opposite, against, on the other hand. 72.
- contumēlia**, -ae, *f.*, insult, indignity. G. 14.
- conveniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, come together, assemble; *trans.*, meet. G. 6.
- conventus**, -ūs, *m.*, assembly, court. G. 18.
- convertō**, -ere, -vertī, -versus, turn around, change. G. 23.
- convocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call together, summon. G. 16.
- cōpia**, -ae, *f.*, a supply, plenty; *pl.*, supplies, troops, forces. 9.
- cōpiōsus**, -a, -um, full of supplies, wealthy, plentiful. G. 23.
- corpus**, -poris, *n.*, body. 19.
- cotidiānus**, -a, -um, daily, customary. G. 1.
- cotidiē**, *adv.*, daily, every day. G. 16.
- Crassus**, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Crassus, a wealthy politician and general. G. 21.
- crēdō**, -ere, **crēdidī**, **crēditus**, lend, intrust; *with dat.*, trust, believe; suppose. 39.
- cremō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, burn, consume. G. 4.
- creō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, create, elect, choose, make. 34.
- crēscō**, -ere, **crēvī**, **crētus**, grow, increase, become strong. G. 20.
- crūdēlis**, -e, *adj.*, cruel. 27.

culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, reprove, blame. 18.

cultus, -ūs, m., cultivation, care, civilization. G. 1.

cum, prep. with abl., with; **cum cūrā**, carefully. 21.

cum, conj. with indic. when, whenever, at the time when; *with subunc.*, when, while, although, since, because. 57.

Cūmae, -ārum, f., a Greek city on the west coast of Italy. 69.

cupidō, adv., eagerly. G. 15.

cupiditās, -tātis, f., eagerness, desire. G. 2.

cupidus, -a, -um, eager, fond of, ambitious for. G. 2.

cupiō, -ere, -ivi, -itus, desire, be eager for, wish well for. G. 18.

cūr, rel. and interrog. adv., why, 62.

cūra, -ae, f., care. 74.

Cūriātius, -ī, m., an Alban. 45.

cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, take care, provide for, cause. G. 13.

currō, -ere, cucurri, cursurus, run. 21.

custōs, -tōdis, m. and f., guard, watch, keeper. 77.

damnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, find guilty, condemn. G. 4.

dē, prep. with abl., from, about, concerning, of. 21.

dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, owe, ought, must. G. 11.

decem, indecl. num., ten. 12.

dēcernō, -ere, dēcrēvi, dēcrētus, decide, contend, resolve. 41.

decimus, -a, -um, tenth. 26.

dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus (dēcapiō), deceive. G. 14.

decuriō, -ōnis, m., a decurion, commander of a squad of ten horsemen. G. 23.

dēditicius, -a, -um, surrendered. G. 27.

dēditiō, -ōnis, f., a surrender. G. 27.

dēfendō, -ere, -ndi, -ēnsus, defend, ward off. 30.

dēfetiscor, dēfetiscī, dēfessus, become exhausted, become weary. G. 25.

dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (dēiaciō), cast down, drive off, destroy. G. 8.

deinde, adv., then, next, immediately. 30.

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, destroy. 13.

dēliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, deliberate, consider. G. 7.

dēligō, -ere, -lōgī, -lēctus (dēlegō), choose, select. G. 3.

dēminuō, -ere, -minuī, -minūtus, lessen, impair. G. 18.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, point out, show, make known, state. G. 11.

dēmum, adv., at last, at length. G. 17.

dēnique, adv., at last, finally. G. 22.

dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, lay down, lay aside. G. 14.

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus, ravage, lay waste. G. 11.

dēprecātor, -ōris, m., mediator, intercessor. G. 9.

dēprehendō, -ere, -ndī, -ēnsus, seize, catch, find out. 63.

dēserō, -ere, dēsēruī, dēsertus, abandon, desert. 22.

- dēsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, indicate, mean. G. 18.
- dēsistō, -ere, dēstitī, dēstitūrus**, cease, desist. G. 8.
- dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, cease to hope, despair. 46.
- dēspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus**, look down upon, despise. G. 13.
- dēstituō, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtus**, abandon, desert. G. 16.
- dēstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictus**, strip off, draw (*a sword*). G. 25.
- dēterreō, -ēre, -terrui, -territus**, frighten off, prevent. G. 17.
- dētrīmentum, -ī, n.**, loss. 18.
- deus, -ī, m.**, a god. 70.
- dexter, dextera or dextra, dexterum or dextrum**, right (*not left*); **dextra (manus)**, the right hand. G. 20.
- Diāna, -ae, an Italian goddess**. 57.
- dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus**, say, speak. 57.
- dictātor, -ōris, m.**, a dictator, a chief magistrate with unlimited power, who with his lieutenant, "the master of the horse," was appointed for a limited time to supersede the ordinary magistrates in great emergencies. 68.
- dictiō, -ōnis, f.**, a speaking, pleading. G. 4.
- diēs, diēī, m. and f.**, day, time. 34.
- differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātus (dis-ferō)**, bear apart, defer, differ. G. 1.
- difficilis, -e**, not easy, difficult, hard. G. 6.
- dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (dis-**
- mittō)**, send away, let go, dismiss. G. 18.
- diripiō, -ere, -ripui, -reptus (dis-rapiō)**, plunder, pillage. 39.
- discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus**, go apart, retire, depart. G. 14.
- discō, -ere, didici**, learn. G. 13.
- disiciō, -ere, -fēcī, -iectus (dis-iaciō)**, hurl apart, scatter, rout. G. 25.
- dispōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus**, place here and there, distribute, station. G. 8.
- diū, adv.**, for a long time. 10.
- diūtius, comp. of diū**, for a longer time, longer, too long. G. 16.
- diūturnus, -a, -um**, long (*in time*), long continued. G. 14.
- dīves, Gen., dīvitis**, rich; *superl.*, **dītissimus**, richest. G. 2.
- Diviciācus, -ī, m.**, an *Haeduan* chief, friendly to the Romans. G. 3.
- Diviciō, -ōnis, m.**, an *Helvetian* leader. G. 13.
- dividō, -ere, divīsī, divīsus**, divide, separate. G. 1.
- dō, dare, dedī, datus**, give. 7.
- doleō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus**, feel pain, suffer, grieve. G. 14.
- dolor, -ōris, m.**, pain, grief, distress. G. 2.
- dolus, -ī, m.**, deceit, tricks, stratagem. G. 13.
- domicilium, -ī, n.**, dwelling, abode. G. 30.
- dominus, -ī, m.**, master. 7.
- domus, -ūs, f.**, house, home. 32.
- dōnum, -ī, n.**, gift. 10.
- dubitātiō, -ōnis, f.**, doubt, hesitation. G. 14.

- dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus**, doubt, hesitate. 70.
- dubius -a, -um**, doubtful, uncertain. G. 3.
- ducentī, -ae, -a**, two hundred. 56.
- dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus**, lead, conduct, take, think. 21.
- dum, conj.**, while, until, so long as, G. 7.
- Dumnorix, -rīgis, m., an Haeduan**, brother of Diviciacus, but unfriendly to the Romans. G. 3.
- duo, duae, duo**, two. 38.
- duodecim**, twelve. 12.
- duodēvigintī, indecl.**, eighteen. G. 23.
- dux, ducis, m.**, leader, guide. 19.
- ē, prep. with abl.** See **ex**.
- ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductus**, lead out, bring out, take out. 39.
- effēminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, make effeminate, weaken, enfeeble. G. 1.
- efferrō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus (ex-ferō)**, carry out, publish, elate. G. 5.
- egeō, -ēre, egui**, want, need, lack, with *abl.* 76.
- ego, mei, pers. pron., I.** 61.
- ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus (ex-gradior)**, go out. G. 27.
- ēgregius, -a, -um**, excellent. 18.
- ēmittō, -ere, ēmisi, ēmissus**, send forth, let go, hurl. 50.
- emō, -ere, ēmi, ēemptus**, buy, purchase. G. 16.
- enim, conj.**, for. G. 14.
- ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, make known, report. G. 4.
- eō, adv.**, thither, to that place. 8.
- eō, ire, ii (ivī), itūrus, go.** 33, 41.
- eōdem, adv.**, to the same place, to the same end. G. 4.
- eques, -itis, m.**, horseman, cavalryman, knight. 24.
- equester, -tris, -tre**, of the cavalry G. 18.
- equitātus, -ūs, m.**, cavalry. 52.
- equus, -i, m.**, horse. 5.
- ēripiō, -ere, ēripiī, ēreptus (ex-rapiō)**, snatch away, take from, rescue. G. 4.
- et, conj.**, and; both . . . and. 1.
- etiam, conj.**, also, even. 21.
- Etrūscī, -ōrum, m.**, the people inhabiting ancient Italy from the Tiber northward. 76.
- ēvādō, -ere, ēvāsi, -sūrus**, go forth, escape, climb, mount. 78.
- ēvellō, -ere, ēvellī and ēvulsī, ēvulsus**, pull out. G. 25.
- ex (ē), prep. with abl.**, out of, from. 11.
- excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus**, withdraw, depart. 22.
- excitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, call forth, awaken, excite. 78.
- exemplum, -i, n.**, example, practice, precedent. G. 8.
- exeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus**, go out, depart. G. 2.
- exercitus, -ūs, m.**, army. 32.
- existimātiō, -ōnis, f.**, opinion, estimate, reputation. G. 20.
- existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, judge, think, believe. G. 6.
- expeditus, -a, -um**, unencumbered, easy, light-armed (*troops*). G. 6.
- expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus**, drive out, expel. 23.
- explōrātor, -ōris, m.**, scout. G. 12.

- expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, take by storm, capture. G. 11.
- exsequor, exsequi, exsecutus**, follow out, follow up ; **iūs exsequi**, enforce the law. G. 4.
- expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, look out for, wait, wait to see. G. 11.
- exsul, -ulis, m. and f.**, an exile. 78.
- extrā, adv. and prep. with acc.**, outside of, beyond. G. 10.
- extrēmus, -a, -um**, farthest, last, at the end. G. 1.
- exūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustus, trans.**, burn up. G. 5.
- Fabius, -ī, m.** *The Fabii were a famous patrician family in ancient Rome.* 77.
- fābula, -ae, f.**, story, fable. 2.
- facile, adv.**, easily. 7.
- facilis, -e**, easy. G. 21.
- faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus**, make, do. 31.
- facultās, -tātis, f.**, power, opportunity ; **pl.**, means, resources. G. 7.
- fallō, -ere, fefelli, falsus**, deceive, elude, disappoint, escape the notice of. 78.
- fāma, -ae, f.**, fame, report, tradition, reputation. 17.
- famēs, -is, f.**, hunger, starvation. G. 28.
- familia, -ae, f.**, body of slaves or vassals, household, family. G. 4.
- familiāris, -e, adj.**, of the household, private, intimate ; **rēs familiāris**, private property. G. 18.
- faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus**, be favorable to, favor. G. 18.
- fēmina, -ae, f.**, woman, lady. 9.
- fera, -ae, f.**, wild beast. 8.
- ferāx, Gen., ferācis, adj.**, fertile, productive. 27.
- ferē, adv.**, almost, nearly ; generally. G. 1.
- ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**, bear, carry, endure, report. 53.
- ferrum, -ī, n.**, iron ; *anything made of iron* : ax, sword, dart. 66.
- fidēs, -ei, f.**, faith, belief, faithfulness, pledge, protection. 49.
- filia, -ae, f.**, daughter. 1.
- filius, -ī, m.**, son. 7.
- finis, -is, m.**, border, end ; **pl.**, borders, territory. 23.
- finitimus, -a, -um**, adjoining, neighboring ; **pl. as noun**, neighbors. 31.
- fīō, fieri, factus**, be made, be done, become, happen. 50.
- firmus, -a, -um**, strong. G. 3.
- flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, demand. 1 G. 16.
- fleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus**, weep, weep for. G. 20.
- flōrēns, Gen., flōrentis, adj.**, flourishing, prosperous, influential. G. 30.
- flūmen, -inis, n.**, river. 19.
- fluō, -ere, flūxī**, flow. G. 6.
- fluvius, -ī, m.**, stream, river. 11.
- foedus, -eris, n.**, treaty, agreement. 47.
- fōns, fontis, m.**, spring, fountain. 70.
- forte, adv.**, by chance, accidentally. 73.
- fortis, -e**, strong, brave. 25.
- fortiter, adv.**, bravely. 16.
- fortitūdō, -dinis, f.**, bravery. G. 2.
- fortūna, -ae, f.**, fortune, lot, fate. 11.

forum, -ī, n., market place, forum; *the center of public life in an ancient city, generally surrounded by shops, porticoes, and temples.* 70.

fossa, -ae, f., ditch, trench. 57.

frāter, -tris, m., brother. 19.

frāternus, -a, -um, adj., of a brother, brotherly. G. 20.

frīgus, -oris, n., cold, cold weather; *pl.*, frosts. G. 16.

fructuōsus, -a, -um, fertile, fruitful. G. 30.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, pertaining to grain, productive of grain. G. 10.

frūmentum, -ī, n., grain; *pl.*, standing grain. 12.

frūstrā, adv., to no purpose, in vain. 76.

frūx, frūgis, f., fruit, produce; *pl.*, crops. G. 28.

fuga, -ae, f., flight, running away. 77.

fugio, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee. 31.

fugitivus, -a, -um, runaway; *pl. as noun*, runaways. G. 23.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, put to flight. 8.

fulmen, -inis, n., thunderbolt, flash of lightning. 50.

fūrtim, adv., stealthily, by stealth 78.

Gabinius, -ī, m., one of the consuls of 58 B.C. G. 6.

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul, the ancient name for France. 24.

Gallicus, -a, -um, of the Gauls, Gallic. G. 22.

Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul, a native of Gaul; *adj.*, Gallic. 24.

gaudium, -ī, n., joy. 11.

geminus, -a, -um, twin- (brother or sister). 70.

Genāva, -ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva. G. 6.

gēns, gentis, f., race, tribe. 23.

Germānia, -ae, f., Germany. 28.

Germānus, -a, -um, German, a German. 28.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, bear, carry on, do, wage; **bellum gerere**, wage war, carry on war. 24.

gladius, -ī, m., sword. 7.

glōria, -ae, f., glory, renown. 16.

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus, glory in, boast. G. 14.

Graecus, -a, -um, Greek, Grecian. G. 29.

Graiocelī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Alps. G. 10.

grātia, -ae, f., gratitude, goodwill, influence. G. 9.

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus, with dat., congratulate. G. 30.

grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, agreeable, grateful. 72.

gravis, -e, heavy, severe. 27.

graviter, adv., heavily, severely, seriously. 46.

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, have, hold. 6.

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, dwell, reside, inhabit. 33.

Haeduus, -a, -um, of the Haeduan; *noun*, an Haeduan. G. 3.

hasta, -ae, f., spear. 9.

Helvētiī, -ōrum, m., the Helve-

- tians, *a Celtic race inhabiting Switzerland in ancient times.*
- Helvētius**, -a, -um, Helvetian. G. 2.
- hibernus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of winter; *neut. pl.*, **hiberna**, -ōrum, winter quarters. G. 10.
- hic**, **haec**, **hoc**, this; he, she, it. 49.
- hiemō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, pass the winter, winter. G. 10.
- hiems**, **hiemis**, *f.*, winter. 24.
- Hispania**, -ae, *f.*, Spain. G. 1.
- hodiē**, *adv.*, to-day, at the present time. 45.
- homō**, -inis, *m. and f.*, man, human being (*man or woman*). 30.
- honor**, -ōris, *m.*, respect, honor, office. G. 18.
- hōra**, -ae, *f.*, hour. G. 26.
- Horātius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman. 65.
- hortor**, -ārī, -ātus, encourage, urge. 74.
- hortus**, -ī, *m.*, garden. 4.
- hostis**, -is, *m.*, enemy. 23.
- hūmānitās**, -ātis, *f.*, humanity, refinement. G. 1.
- iactō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, toss, toss about, discuss. G. 18.
- iam**, *adv.*, already; *with a negative*, no longer. 10.
- Iāniculum**, -ī, *n.*, Janiculum, a high hill on the right bank of the Tiber. 51.
- ibi**, *adv.*, there, in that place. 13.
- ictus**, -ūs, *m.*, a stroke. G. 25.
- idem**, **eadem**, **idem**, the same; also, likewise. 51.
- idōneus**, -a, -um, fit, suitable. 72.
- Idūs**, -uum, *f.*, the Ides, 13th or 15th of the month. G. 7.
- ignāvus**, -a, -um, lazy, cowardly. 18.
- ignis**, -is, *m.*, fire. 54.
- ignōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fail to notice, not to know. G. 27.
- ille**, -a, -ud, that; he, she, it. 52.
- illīc**, *adv.*, there, in that place. G. 18.
- immortālis**, -e, immortal. G. 12.
- impedimentum**, -ī, *n.*, hindrance; *pl.*, (heavy) baggage. G. 24.
- impediō**, -īre, -ivī and -iī, -itus, entangle, hinder, impede. G. 12.
- impendeō**, -ēre, overhang. G. 6.
- imperātor**, -ōris, *m.*, general. 26.
- imperium**, -ī, *n.*, command, authority, power, empire. 43.
- imperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, command, order, levy (*soldiers*). 38.
- impetrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, obtain a request, secure. G. 9.
- impetus**, -ūs, *m.*, attack, assault, fury, violence. 39.
- importō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*importō*), import. G. 1.
- improbus**, -a, -um, bad, wicked, reckless. G. 17.
- imprōvisō**, *adv.*, unexpectedly. G. 13.
- impūne**, *adv.*, with impunity. G. 14.
- impūnitās**, -ātis, *f.*, freedom from punishment, impunity. G. 14.
- in**, *prep. with abl.*, in, on, among, within; *with acc.*, into, on, to, against. 11.
- incendō**, -ere, -ndī, -ēnsus, burn, set fire to, inflame, excite. 39.
- incitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, set in motion, impel, rouse. G. 4.
- incola**, -ae, *m.*, inhabitant. 9.

- incolō, -ere, -coluī**, inhabit, live, dwell. 76.
- incommodum, -ī, n.**, disadvantage, defeat, disaster, misfortune. G. 13.
- incrēdibilis, -e**, incredible, marvelous. G. 12.
- inde, adv.**, thence, from that place, from that time. 67.
- indiciū, -ī, n.**, information, evidence, an informer. G. 4.
- indicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictus**, proclaim, declare, appoint. 43.
- indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus**, lead on, induce; draw on, cover. G. 2.
- industria, -ae, f.**, industry, activity. 17.
- inferior, -ius**, lower, lower part of, weaker. G. 1.
- inferō, -ferre, intulī, -lātus**, bring, bring in, bring against. 65.
- inflectō, -ere, -flexī, -inflexus**, bend, bend down. G. 25.
- inflūō, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxūrus**, flow into. G. 8.
- ingenium, -ī, n.**, disposition, character, abilities. 17.
- ingredior, -gredī, -gressus (ingradiator)**, advance, go in, enter. 65.
- inimicus, -a, -um**, hostile, unfriendly; *noun*, a personal enemy. 18.
- initium, -ī, n.**, beginning, origin. G. 1.
- iniūria, -ae, f.**, injury, wrong, insult. 31.
- iniussū, m.**, *only in abl.*, without orders, without command. G. 19.
- inopia, -ae, f.**, want, lack. G. 27.
- inopināns, Gen., inopinantis, adj.**, not suspecting, off one's guard, unaware. G. 12.
- inquit**, he (she, it) says. 41.
- insciēns, Gen., -entis, adj.**, not knowing, unaware. G. 19.
- insequor, -sequī, -secūtus**, follow after, pursue. G. 15.
- insidiae, -ārum, f.**, snare, trap, ambush. 77.
- insigne, -is, n.**, sign, badge, decoration. G. 22.
- insignis, -e, adj.**, marked, notable, signal. G. 12.
- insolenter, adv.**, insultingly. G. 14.
- instituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus**, establish, appoint, teach, begin. 33.
- institutum, -ī, n.**, habit, practice, custom, institution. G. 1.
- instō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus**, press on, be at hand, threaten. G. 16.
- instruō, -ere, -ūxī, -ūctus**, arrange, draw up. 72.
- intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus**, learn, know, understand. 72.
- inter, prep. with acc.**, between, among. 16.
- intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus**, go between, intervene, exist between. G. 7.
- interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus (inter-claudō)**, shut off, hinder. G. 23.
- interdiū, adv.**, by day. G. 8.
- interdum, adv.**, for a time, sometimes. G. 14.
- intereā, adv.**, meanwhile, in the meantime. G. 8.
- interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (inter-faciō)**, kill, put to death. 49

- interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime. 61.
- intermittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, interrupt, stop, omit, let pass. G. 26.
- interneciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, extermination, annihilation. G. 13.
- interpres**, -etis, *m.*, interpreter. G. 19.
- intersum**, -esse, -fuī, be between, take part in. G. 15.
- intervāllum**, -ī, *n.*, interval, distance, space. G. 22.
- invitus**, -a, -um, unwilling. G. 8.
- ipse**, -a, -um, himself, he himself, in person, the very. 60.
- ire**. See **eō**, go.
- is**, *ea*, *id*, this, that, he, she, it. 35.
- ita**, *adv.*, so, in such a way, thus. G. 11.
- Italia**, -ae, *f.*, Italy. 31.
- itaque**, *adv.*, and so, accordingly. G. 9.
- item**, *adv.*, likewise, also. 35.
- iter**, **itineris**, *n.*, march, journey, way, path, road. 77.
- iterum**, *adv.*, again, a second time. 52.
- iubeō**, -ēre, **iussī**, **iussus**, bid, order, command, with *inf.* and *acc.* 53.
- iūdex**, -icis, *m.*, judge, juror. 73.
- iūdicium**, -ī, *n.*, judgment, trial, court of trial. G. 4.
- iūdicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, judge, decide. 68.
- iugum**, -ī, *n.*, yoke, ridge, crest. G. 7.
- iūlius**, -ī, *m.*, *Caesar's nomen*. 24.
- iumentum**, -ī, *n.*, a beast of burden. 12.
- iungō**, -ere, **iūnxī**, **iunctus**, join. G. 8.
- Iūnius**, -ī, *m.*, *Brutus' nomen*. 59.
- Iūnō**, -ōnis, *f.*, the goddess Juno. 78.
- Iuppiter**, **Iovis**, *m.*, Jupiter, chief god of the old Roman religion. 50.
- Iūra**, -ae, *m.*, Jura, a chain of mountains in eastern Gaul. G. 2.
- iūs**, **iūris**, *n.*, right, justice, law, court of justice. 62.
- iūs iurandum**, **iūris iurandī**, *n.*, oath. G. 3.
- iūstitia**, -ae, *f.*, justice, uprightness. G. 19.
- iuvenis**, -e, young; *noun*, a youth, young man. 42.
- iuvō**, -āre, **iūvī**, **iūtus**, help, aid. G. 26.
- Kalendae**, -ārum, *f.*, the Calends, first day of the Roman month. G. 6.
- L.**, abbreviation for **Lūcius**, a Roman praenomen. 59.
- Labiēnus**, -ī, *m.*, an officer in Caesar's army. 24.
- labōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, labor, toil, suffer. 12.
- laccessō**, -ere, -ivī, -itus, harass, attack, provoke. G. 15.
- lacrima**, -ae, *f.*, a tear. G. 20.
- lacus**, -ūs, *m.*, lake. 68.
- laetus**, -a, -um, glad, happy. 5.
- lapis**, -idis, *m.*, stone. 19.
- largior**, -irī, -itus, give freely, bribe. G. 18.
- largiter**, *adv.*, abundantly. G. 18.

largitiō, -ōnis, f., generosity, bribing. G. 9.

lātē, adv. widely. G. 2.

Latinus, -a, -um, Latin; a Latin. 50.

lātītūdō, -inis, f. width. G. 2.

Latobrigī, -ōrum, m., a tribe associated with the Helvetians. G. 5.

latus, -eris, n., side, flank. G. 25.

lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad. 14.

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, praise. 6.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., embassy. G. 3.

lēgātus, -ī, m., lieutenant, ambassador. 5.

legiō, -ōnis, f., legion. 20.

Lemannus, -ī, m., ancient name for Lake Geneva. G. 2.

lēnitās, -ātis, f., gentleness, smoothness. G. 12.

leō, -ōnis, m., lion. 19.

leviter, adv., lightly, slightly, easily. 47.

lēx, lēgis, f., law. 33.

liber, -brī, m., book. 14.

liber, -era, -erum, free. 14.

liberālītās, -ātis, f., generosity. G. 18.

liberē, adv., freely, openly, without hindrance. 51.

liberī, -ōrum, m., children. 78.

liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, free, set free. 17.

libertās, -ātis, f., liberty, freedom.

liceor, -ērī, -itus, bid (at an auction). G. 18.

licet, -ēre, licuit, impersonal verb, it is allowed, it is permitted. G. 7.

Lingonēs, -um, Acc., Lingonas, a

Gallic nation northwest of the Sequani. G. 26.

lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language. G. 1.

linter, -tris, Gen. pl., linterium, skiff, boat. G. 12.

Liscus, -ī, m., chief magistrate of the Hueduans 58 B.C. G. 16.

littera, -ae, f., a letter (of the alphabet); *pl.*, a letter, epistle. 22.

locus, -ī, m., place, spot; *neut. pl.*, loca, -ōrum, places, locality, region. 58.

longē, adv., far, far away, distant. 47.

longitūdō, -inis, f., length. G. 2.

longus, -a, -um, long. 2.

loquor, loquī, locūtus, speak, talk, say. G. 20.

lūdus, -ī, m., game, sport, school; the *Ludi Romani* were public exhibitions of various kinds given annually in September. 55.

lūx, lūcis, f., light. 72.

M., abbreviation for *Mārcus*, a praenomen. 78.

magis, comp. adv., more, rather. G. 13.

magister, -trī, m., master, teacher. 14.

magistrātus, -ūs, m., magistracy, magistrate. 74.

magnitūdō, -inis, f., greatness, magnitude. 56.

magnopere, adv., greatly. 49.

magnus, -a, -um, large, great. 2.

maior, maius, comp. of magnus, larger, greater; *pl.*, elders, ancestors. 32.

male, adv., badly, ill. 59.

maleficium, -ī, *n.*, harm, mischief. G. 7.

mālō, **mälle**, **māluī**, prefer. 72.

malus, -a, -um, bad, evil, wicked. 10.

mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, intrust, commit, order. G. 12.

maneō, -ēre, **mānsī**, **mānsūrus**, remain, await. 13.

Mānlius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman. 78.

manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand; band (of soldiers), force. 39.

matara, -ae, *f.*, spear, pike (used by the Gauls). G. 26.

māter, -tris, *f.*, mother. 35.

mātrimōnium, -ī, *n.*, marriage, matrimony. 57.

Matrona, -ae, *m.*, the Marne, a river of central Gaul. G. 1.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hasten, make haste. G. 7.

mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, early. G. 16.

maximē, *adv.*, especially, very. G. 10.

maximus, -a, -um, largest, greatest, very great. 52.

medium, -ī, *n.*, the middle, center, intervening space. 45.

medius, -a, -um, middle, in the middle, the middle of. 45.

melior, **melius**, *comp. adj.*, better. 29.

melius, *comp. adv.*, better. 71.

membrum, -ī, *n.*, a part of the body, limb. 74.

meminī, **meminisse**, *perf. form with pres. meaning*, remember. 72.

memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory. G. 7.

Menēnius, -ī, *m.*, name of a certain Agrippa. 74.

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month. 24.

mercātor, -ōris, *m.*, a trader. G. 1.

mereor, -ēri, -itus, win, earn, deserve, serve (in the army). G. 11.

meritum, -ī, *n.*, desert, service. G. 14.

Messāla, -ae, *m.*, Marcus Valerius Messala, consul 61 B.C. G. 2.

mētior, -īri, **mēnsus**, measure, deal, deal out, distribute. G. 16.

Mettius, -ī, *m.*, an Alban general. 49.

metus, -ūs, *m.*, fear, dread, anxiety. 61.

meus, -a, -um, my. 43.

migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, move away, migrate. 13.

mihi, *dat. of ego*, I.

miles, -itis, *m.*, soldier. 20.

mīlia, *pl. of mille*.

militāris, -e, *adj.*, military. 25.

mille, one thousand. 56.

minimē, *superl. adv.*, least, by no means. G. 1.

minimus, -a, -um, *superl. of parvus*, least, very small. G. 8.

minor, **minus**, *comp. of parvus*, smaller. 28.

minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, diminish, weaken, reduce. G. 20.

minus, *adv.*, *comp. of parum*, less. 29.

mīror, -ārī, -ātus, wonder, marvel, admire. 77.

miser, -era, -erum, poor, wretched. 13.

mittō, -ere, **mīsī**, **missus**, send, throw. 21.

modo, *adv.*, only; just now, recently. 43.

- moenia, -ium, n.,** walls (*of a city or walled town*). 30.
- molō, -ere, -uī, -itus,** grind. G. 5.
- moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus,** warn, advise. 6.
- mōns, montis, m.,** a mountain. 23.
- mora, -ae, f.,** delay. 73.
- morior, morī, mortuus and moritūrus,** die. 47.
- moror, -ārī, -ātus,** linger, delay, detain. G. 26.
- mors, mortis, f.,** death. 33.
- mōs, mōris, m.,** manner, custom; *pl.*, customs, character. 51.
- moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus,** move, influence, break up (*camp*). G. 15.
- mox, adv.,** presently, soon. 9.
- Mūcius, -ī, m.,** a young Roman who attempted to slay king Por-sena. 66.
- mulier, -eris, f.,** woman. 19.
- multitūdō, -inis, f.,** multitude, crowd, throng. 25.
- multō, adv.,** much. G. 6.
- multus, -a, -um,** much, many. 3.
- mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itus,** fortify. 30.
- mūnitiō, -ōnis, f.,** fortification. G. 8.
- mūrus, -ī, m.,** wall. 19.
- nam, conj.,** for. 52.
- Nammeius, -ī, m.,** an Helvetian. G. 7.
- nārro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** tell, relate. 6.
- nātūra, -ae, f.,** nature, character. 78.
- nauta, -ae, m.,** sailor. 1.
- nāvis, -is, f.,** ship, boat. 23.
- ne, enclitic used to mark the sentence as interrogative.** 62.
- nē, in independent sentences, not; introducing subordinate clause, that not, lest.** 38.
- necessārius, -a, -um,** necessary, critical, pressing; *noun*, relative, kinsman, close friend. G. 11.
- necne, conj.,** or not; *used in indirect questions.* 67.
- negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** say no, say not, deny. G. 8.
- nēmō, Dat., nēminī, Acc., nēminem, m. and f.,** no man, no one, nobody. 61.
- neque or nec, conj.,** and not, nor; *correl.*, neither . . . nor. 64.
- nervus, -ī, sinew; pl.,** force, power. G. 20.
- nēve, continuing ut or nē, or not, and not, nor.** G. 26.
- nex, necis, f.,** death, violent death. G. 16.
- nihil or nīl, n., nom. and acc. sing. only,** nothing. 74.
- nihilum, -ī, n.,** nothing. G. 5.
- nimum, adv.,** too much, too. 68.
- nisi, conj.,** if not, unless, except. 77.
- nītor, nītī, nīsus and nīxus,** struggle, strive, exert one's self, rely upon. G. 13.
- nōbilis, -e,** well known, noble, eminent. G. 2.
- nōbilitās, -ātis, f.,** nobility, the nobles. G. 2.
- nōbis, dat. and abl. of nōs.**
- nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,** be unwilling, wish not. 67.
- nōmen, -inis, n.,** name. 19.
- nōminātim, adv.,** by name, individually, expressly. G. 29.
- nōn, adv.,** not. 4.

nōnāgintā, *indecl. num.* ninety. G. 29.

nōndum, *adv.*, not yet. G. 6.

nōnne, *used to mark a question when the answer "yes" is expected.* 62.

Nōreia, *-ae, f., a town of the Norici.* G. 5.

Nōricus, *-a, -um, of the Norici, Noric.* G. 5.

nōs, *we, us.* 42.

noster, *-tra, -trum, our.* 13.

novem, *indecl. num.*, nine.

novus, *-a, -um, new, recent, last.* 73.

nox, noctis f., night. 35. **noctū**, *irreg. abl.*, by night. G. 8.

nūbō, *-ere, nūpsī, nūpta*, veil one's self, marry (*of the bride*). G. 18.

nūdus, *-a, -um, naked, unprotected.* G. 25.

nūllus, *-a, -um, not any, none, no.* 57.

num, *used in direct questions when the answer "no" is expected; in indirect questions, whether.* 62.

Numa, *-ae, m., second king of Rome.* 33.

numerus, *-ī, m., number.* 18.

numquam, *adv.*, never. G. 8.

nunc, *adv.*, now. 52.

nūntiō, *-āre, -āvī, -ātus*, announce, report. 39.

nūntius, *-ī, m., messenger, message.* 7.

nūper, *adv.*, lately, recently. G. 6.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for. 49.

obaerātus, *-ī, m., debtor.* G. 4.

obiciō, *-ere, -iēcī, -iectus* (ob-

iaciō), throw in the way of, present, expose. G. 26.

obliscor, *-ī, oblitus*, forget. 72.

obsecrō, *-āre, -āvī, -ātus*, implore, entreat. G. 20.

obses, *-idis, m. and f.*, hostage. 20.

obstringō, *-ere, -inxī, -ictus*, bind. G. 9.

obtineō, *-ēre, -tinuī, -tentus* (**obteneō**), hold, occupy, secure. G. 1.

occāsus, *-ūs, m.*, setting; **occāsus sōlis**, sunset, the west. G. 1.

occidō, *-ere, -cīdī, -cīsus* (**occaedō**), kill. 25.

occultō, *-āre, -āvī, -ātus*, conceal, hide. G. 27.

occupō, *-āre, -āvī, -ātus*, seize, occupy. 20.

occurrō, *-ere, -currī, -cursūrus* (**ob-currō**), run to meet, oppose, resist, meet. 68.

Ōceanus, *-ī, m.*, the ocean. G. 1.

Ocelum, *-ī, n.*, a town of the Grai-oceli on the western border of the province of Cisalpine Gaul. G. 10.

octō, *indecl. num.*, eight. 24.

octōgintā, *indecl. num.*, eighty. 56.

oculus, *-ī, m.*, eye. G. 12.

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, *perf. form with pres. meaning*, hate. G. 18.

odium, *-ī, n.*, hatred. 71.

offendō, *-ere, -ndī, -ēnsus*, strike against, hurt. G. 19.

offēnsiō, *-ōnis, f.*, offense, hurting. G. 19.

ōlim, *adv.*, once, once upon a time. 19.

omninō, *adv.*, altogether, at all, in all. 60.

omnis, -e, all, every. 25.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, *impersonal verb*, it is necessary, ought. 77.

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town, fortified town. 12.

opportūnus, -a, -um, favorable, advantageous. G. 30.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, attack, lay siege to. G. 5.

ops, **opis**, *f.*, aid, help, protection; *pl.*, resources, power, wealth, means. 74.

optimus, -a, -um, *superl. of bonus*, best, very good. 28.

opus, -eris, *n.*, work, labor, a work. 55.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, words, argument. G. 3.

ōrātor, -ōris, *m.*, speaker, orator, ambassador. 74.

Orgetorix, -īgis, *m.*, an *Helvetian* nobleman. G. 2.

orior, -īrī, **ortus**, arise. *Apart from present infinitive this word is of the third conjugation.* 71.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, adorn. 10.

ōrō -āre -āvī, -ātus, speak, beg, entreat. G. 20.

ostendō -ere, -ndī, -ntus, show, point out, declare. G. 8.

P., abbreviation for **Pūblius**, a *praenomen*. G. 21.

pābulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, foraging, procuring fodder. G. 15.

pābulum, -ī, *n.*, fodder, green fodder. G. 16.

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, subdue, pacify. 24.

Padus, -ī, *m.*, the river Po. 76.

paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly. 66.

paenitet, -ēre, -uit, *impersonal*

verb, it repents (one); **mē paenitet**, I repent. 73.

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, district, canton. G. 12.

Palātium, -ī, *n.*, the Palatine, one of the hills of Rome. 55.

palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, swamp. 26.

pār, *Gen.*, **paris**, *adj.*, equal. 51.

parātus, -a, -um, ready, prepared. 63.

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, obey, *with dat.* 41.

pars, **partis**, *f.*, part. 23.

parvus, -a, -um, little, small. 2.

passus, -ūs, *m.*, pace (*five Roman feet*); **mille passūs**, a mile. 58.

pāstor, -ōris, *m.*, shepherd. 19.

pateō, -ēre, -uī, be open, extend;

patens, -ntis, *adj.*, open. G. 2.

pater, -tris, *m.*, father. 60.

patior, **pati**, **passus**, suffer, bear, allow, permit. 61.

patria, -ae, *f.*, native land, fatherland, country. 12.

pauci, -ae, -a, few, a few. 41.

paulatim, *adv.*, gradually, little by little. 76.

paulō, *adv.*, a little, somewhat. 70.

pāx, **pācis**, *f.*, peace. 20.

pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money. 3.

pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle, herd, flock. 19.

pedes, -itis, *m.*, foot-soldier. 24.

pellō, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsus**, strike, impel, drive out, defeat. 26.

per, *prep. with acc.*, through, by, on account of. 59.

perducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, bring, conduct, prolong. G. 8.

perfacilis, -e, very easy. G. 2.

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bear through, endure, submit to.

G. 17.

- perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus** (per-faciō), accomplish, finish, make, bring about. G. 3.
- perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus** (per-frangō), break through. G. 25.
- perfuga, -ae, m., deserter, fugitive.** G. 28.
- perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugus**, flee. G. 27.
- periculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous.** perilous. 61.
- periculum, -i, n., peril, danger.** 26.
- peritus, -a, -um, experienced, skillful.** G. 21.
- permittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, in-trust, permit, allow.** G. 30.
- permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move, influence, arouse, alarm.** G. 3.
- perniciēs, -ēī, f., ruin.** G. 20.
- perpaucī, -ae, -a, very few.** G. 6.
- perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, break through.** G. 8.
- persequor, -sequi, -secūtus, follow up, pursue, attack.** G. 13.
- persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, persist.** G. 13.
- persolvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtus, pay, suffer (a penalty).** G. 12.
- persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, persuade.** 38.
- perterreō, -ēre, -terrui, -territus, frighten, terrify, alarm.** G. 18.
- pertineō, -ēre, -tinui (per-teneō), extend, pertain to, tend.** G. 1.
- pervenio, -ire, -vēni, -ventūrus, arrive at, reach, come to.** G. 7.
- pēs, pedis, m., foot.** 21.
- petō, -ere, -ivi and -ii, -itus, seek, ask.** 32.
- phalanx, -angis, f., a phalanx, array of troops.** G. 24.
- pilum, -i, n., javelin, the distinctive weapon of the Roman legion.** G. 25.
- Pisō, -ōnis, m., Marcus Piso, consul in 61 B.C.** G. 2.
- placeō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, please, suit, satisfy, with dat.** 41.
- plēbs, plēbis, f., no pl., the common people, commons, plebeians.** 71.
- plērumque, adv., for the most part, mostly, generally.** 73.
- plūrimum, superl. adv., very much; plūrimum posse, be most powerful.** G. 3.
- plūrimus, -a, -um, very much, very many.** 28.
- plūs, plūris, neut. noun and adv., more; pl., adj., more, many.** 49.
- poena, -ae, f., penalty, punishment.** G. 4.
- polliceor, -ēri, -itus, promise, offer.** G. 14.
- Pollūx, -ūcis, m., name of Castor's twin-brother.** 70.
- pōnō, -ere, posui, -itus, put down, set, place; castra pōnere, pitch a camp.** 58.
- pōns, pontis, m., bridge.** 51.
- populātiō, -ōnis, f., plundering, pillaging.** G. 15.
- populor, -āri, -ātus, ravage, devastate.** G. 11.
- populus, -i, m., people.** 24.
- Porsinna, -ae, m., a powerful king of Clusium.** 65.
- porta, -ae, f., city-gate, gate.** 77.
- portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, carry.** 5.
- portōrium, -i, n., toll, customs, duty.** G. 18.

- poscō, -ere, poposci**, demand, claim. G. 27.
- possessiō, -ōnis, f.**, possession. G. 11.
- possum, posse, potui**, be able, can. 48.
- post, adv., and prep. with acc.**, afterwards, after, behind. 16.
- postea, adv.**, afterwards. 22.
- postera, -um, adj., masc. lacks nom. sing.**, following, next. 63.
- postquam, conj.**, after. 64.
- postridiē, adv.**, on the following day. G. 23.
- Postumius, -ī, m.**, a Roman general. 68.
- potēns, Gen., potentis, adj.**, powerful. 65.
- potentia, -ae, f.**, power, influence. G. 18.
- potestās, -ātis, f.**, power. 20.
- potior, -irī, -itus**, get possession of, *with abl.*; *with gen.*, get the mastery over. 48.
- praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus**, go before; surpass, excel. G. 1.
- praecipīō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (prae-capiō)**, anticipate, command, instruct. G. 22.
- praeda, -ae, f.**, booty, plunder, spoil. 43.
- praefficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (prae-faciō)**, place at the head, put in command. G. 10.
- praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus**, send ahead. G. 15.
- praemium, -ī, n.**, reward. 42.
- praeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, prefer. G. 25.
- praesēns, Gen., praesentis, adj.**, present. G. 18.
- praesentia, -ae, f.**, presence, the present time. G. 15.
- praesertim, adv.**, especially. 73.
- praesidium, -ī, n.**, guard, aid, garrison, post. 65.
- praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus and -stātus**, excel, (*with dat.*); *trans.*, perform, exhibit. 70.
- praesum, -esse, -fui**, be at the head, be in command of. 48.
- praeter, adv. and prep. with acc.**, beyond, past, besides, except. 68.
- praeteritus, -a, -um**, past, bygone. G. 20.
- praetor, -ōris, m.**, general; a praetor, a Roman magistrate next below consul in rank. G. 21.
- precēs, -um, sing. rare except abl.**, **prece, f.**, prayers, entreaties. G. 16.
- precor, -ārī, -ātus**, pray, entreat. 66.
- premō, -ere, pressī, pressus**, press, oppress, burden, press upon, attack. 73.
- prēndō, -ere, -ndī, -nsus**, seize, take, grasp. G. 20.
- pretium, -ī, n.**, price, value, reward. 17.
- pridiē, adv.**, on the day before. G. 23.
- primum, adv.**, first, at first. G. 25.
- primus, -a, -um**, first. 31.
- princeps, Gen., principis, adj.**, first, chief, foremost; *noun*, chief, foremost man. G. 7.
- principātus, -ūs, m.**, leadership, supremacy. G. 3.
- prior, prius, comp. adj.**, former, previous, prior. 51.

- prīstinus**, -a, -um, old, former. G. 13.
- priusquam**, *conj.*, before, sooner than. 64.
- privātim**, *adv.*, privately, as private persons. G. 17.
- privātus**, -a, -um, personal, private, out of office; *noun*, a citizen in private life. 61.
- prō**, *prep. with abl.*, before, in behalf of, for, instead of, in proportion to. 43.
- probō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, approve, prove, show. G. 3.
- prōditor**, -ōris, *m.*, traitor, betrayer. 39.
- prōdō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, give up, betray, hand down, transmit. G. 13.
- proelium**, -ī, *n.*, battle. 13.
- profectiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, departure. G. 3.
- proficīscor**, -ī, -fectus, start, set out, go, march. 51.
- prohibeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus (**prōhabeō**), restrain, keep off, prevent. 70.
- prōiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (**prōiaciō**), throw forward, cast down, abandon. G. 27.
- prope** (*comp.*, **propius**; *superl.*, **proximō**), *adv.*, near; *also prep. with acc.*, near. 56.
- propellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, drive back, repel, rout. G. 15.
- properō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hurry, hasten. 8.
- propinquus**, -a, -um, near, related; *pl.*, relatives. G. 16.
- prōpōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, place before, state, make known. G. 17.
- propter**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, near by, on account of. G. 9.
- propterea**, *adv.*, on this account. G. 1.
- prōspiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, look forward, provide for. G. 23.
- prōvincia**, -ae, *f.*, province. 13.
- proximē**, *superl. adv.*, lately, last recently. G. 24.
- proximus**, -a, -um, nearest, next, last. G. 1.
- pūblicē**, *adv.*, publicly, as a state. G. 16.
- pūblicus**, -a, -um, of the people, of the state, public. G. 12.
- puella**, -ae, *f.*, girl. 1.
- puer**, -erī, *m.*, boy, child. 12.
- pugna**, -ae, *f.*, fight, battle. 18.
- pugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, fight. 7.
- pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, fine. 13.
- pūniō**, -ire, -ivī and -iī, -itus, punish. 52.
- pūrgō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make clean, free from blame. G. 28.
- putō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, think. 45.
- Pyrēnaei** (**montēs**), *m.*, the Pyrenees. G. 1.
- quā**, *rel. adv.*, where, by which way. G. 6.
- quadrāgintā**, *indecl. num.*, forty. 56.
- quadringenti**, -ae, -a, four hundred. G. 5.
- quaerō**, -ere, **quaesivī**, -itus, seek, ask, inquire. 64.
- quālis**, -e, *rel. and interrog. adj.*, of what sort. G. 21.
- quam**, *adv. and conj.*, than, how;

- quam diū**, as long as. *With superl.*, as much as possible. 29, 66.
- quantus, -a, -um**, *rel. and interrog. adj.*, how great, how much, as great as, as. G. 17.
- quārē**, on account of which thing, wherefore. 31.
- quārtus, -a, -um**, fourth. 56.
- quattuor**, *indecl. num.*, four. 26.
- quattuordecim**, *indecl. num.*, fourteen. G. 29.
- que**, *enclit. conj.*, and. 4.
- queror, -i, questus**, complain, lament. 71.
- quī, quae, quod**, *rel. pron.*, who, which, that, whose, whom, etc. 42.
- quīdam, quaedam, quiddam**, a certain one, a certain thing. 69.
- quidem**, *adv.*, certainly, indeed, at least; **nē . . . quidem**, not even; *emphatic word comes between nē and quidem*. 77.
- quīn, conj.**, but, that; **quīn etiam**, nay even. 70.
- quīndecim**, *indecl. num.*, fifteen. 56.
- quīngentī, -ae, -a**, five hundred. G. 15.
- quīnī, -ae, -a**, five each, five apiece. G. 15.
- quīnque**, *indecl. num.*, five. 56.
- quīntus, -a, -um**, fifth. G. 6.
- quis, quid**, *interrog. and indef. pron.*, who? what? any one, anything, some one, something. 62, 72.
- quisquam, quicquam**, *indef. pron.*, any one, anything. 68.
- quisque, quidque**, *indef. pron.*, each one, each thing, each. 68.
- quō**, *with subj.*, in order that. G. 8.
- quod, conj.**, because, that, the fact that; **quod sī**, but if. 71.
- quōminus or quō minus, conj.**, that not, in order that not, from. 71.
- quōmodo or quō modo**, in what manner, how, as. 67.
- quoque, adv.**, also, too. G. 1.
- quot**, *indecl. rel. and interrog. adj.*, as many, as many as, how many. G. 29.
- quotannis, adv.**, yearly, every year. 59.
- raeda (also rēda), -ae, f.**, wagon. G. 26.
- rapīna, -ae, f.**, plunder, plundering. G. 15.
- ratio, -ōnis, f.**, reckoning, account, reason, plan. G. 28.
- ratis, -is, f.**, raft. G. 8.
- Rauraci, -ōrum, m.**, a tribe near the Rhine. G. 5.
- recēns, Gen., -entis, adj.**, new, fresh, late. G. 14.
- recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (recapiō)**, take back, recover, receive; **sē recipere**, betake one's self, withdraw, retreat. 54.
- recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, refuse, decline, reject. 50.
- reddō, -ere, -didi, -ditus**, give back, return, deliver. 61.
- redeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus**, go back, turn back, return. 47.
- redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptus (red-emō)**, buy back, purchase, buy up. G. 18.
- redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, renew. G. 25.

- reditiō, -ōnis, f.**, a return, returning. G. 5.
- redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus**, lead back, bring back. G. 28.
- referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus**, carry back, report, refer. 63.
- Rēgillus, -ī, m.**, name of an ancient lake, the exact location of which is unknown. It was not far from Tusculum. 68.
- rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, rule, be king, reign. 50.
- rēgnum, -ī, n.**, kingdom, power, rule. 43.
- regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus**, rule, rule over, govern. 25.
- reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (re-iaciō)**, throw back, hurl back, drive back. G. 24.
- relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus**, leave, abandon. 22.
- reliquus, -a, -um**, remaining, the rest, future. G. 1.
- reminiscor, -sci, remember.** G. 13.
- removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus**, move back, remove, dismiss. G. 19.
- renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, bring back word, report. G. 21.
- repellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus**, drive back, repulse, repel. G. 8.
- repentīnus, -a, -um**, sudden, hasty. G. 13.
- reperiō, -ire, repperī, repertus**, find, find out, learn. G. 18.
- repetō, -ere, -ivī and -iī, -itus**, seek again, demand back. 50.
- reprehendō, -ere, -ndī, -ēnsus**, restrain, blame. G. 20.
- repugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus**, resist, oppose. G. 19.
- rēs, rei, f.**, thing, affair, circumstance, property. 35.
- rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus**, cut away, destroy. G. 7.
- resciscō, -ere, -scivī and -scīī, -scītus**, discover, learn. G. 28.
- resistō, -ere, -stitī**, stand still, stop, resist, with *dat.* 38.
- respondeō, -ēre, -ndī, -ōnsus**, answer, reply. 76.
- respōnsum, -ī, n.**, answer, reply. G. 14.
- rēspūblica, reipūblicae, f.**, state, republic, commonwealth. 59.
- restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus**, set up again, restore. G. 18.
- retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (reteneō)**, hold back, detain, retain. G. 18.
- revertor, -ī, reversus**, return, come back. *Perfect has the active form, revertī.* G. 7.
- rēx, rēgis, m.**, king. 20.
- Rhēnus, -ī, m.**, the Rhine. 28.
- Rhodanus, -ī, m.**, the Rhone. G. 1.
- ripa, -ae, f.**, bank (of a stream). 11.
- rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, ask. 29.
- Rōma, -ae, f.**, Rome. 31.
- Rōmānus, -a, -um**, of Rome, Roman; *noun*, a Roman. 20.
- Rōmulus, -ī, m.**, founder and first king of Rome. 31.
- rosa, -ae, f.**, rose. 1.
- rūrsus, adv.**, again, back again. G. 25.
- rūs, rūris, n.**, the country (*as opposed to the city*). 34.
- Sabinus, -a, -um**, Sabine; *noun*, a

- Sabine. *The Sabines lived in central Italy.* 31.
- sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred. 74.
- sacrum, -ī, *n.*, a holy thing or place; a religious rite. 33.
- saepe, *adv.*, often. 12.
- salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, safety. 32.
- sanciō, -īre, sānxī, sānctus, make sacred, make binding, ordain. G. 30.
- Santonēs, -um, *Acc.*, Santonōs, *m.*, a tribe of western Gaul north of the Garumna. G. 10.
- sapientia, -ae, *f.*, good sense, discretion, wisdom. 52.
- sarcina, -ae, *f.*, pack, baggage carried by soldiers. G. 24.
- satis, *indecl. adj. and adv.*, enough, sufficiently. 65.
- satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, satisfy, make amends, apologize. G. 14.
- scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness. 34.
- sciō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, know. G. 20.
- scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, write. 22.
- scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield. 10.
- sēcēdō, -ere, sēcessi, sēcessūrus, withdraw, retire, go away. 74.
- sēcrētō, *adv.*, privately. G. 18.
- secundus, -a -um, following, second, favorable. 33. G. 14.
- sed, *conj.*, but. 18.
- sēdecim, *indecl. num.*, sixteen. 16.
- sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, sit, sit still, remain seated. 78.
- sēditīō, -ōnis, *f.*, secession, mutiny, insurrection. 74.
- sēditīōsus, -a, -um, seditious, factious. G. 17.
- Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of central Gaul. G. 10.
- sēmentis, -is, *f.*, a sowing (of grain). G. 3.
- semper, *adv.*, always. G. 18.
- senātus, -ūs, *m.*, the senate. 61.
- senex, senis, *m.*, an old man. 78.
- sēnī, -ae, -a, six each, six apiece. G. 15.
- sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, perceive, know, think. G. 18.
- sēparātīm, *adv.*, separately, privately. G. 19.
- septem, *indecl. num.*, seven. 56.
- septentriō, -ōnis, *m.*, the north; *pl. with same meaning.* G. 1.
- septimus, -a, -um, seventh. G. 10.
- septuāgintā, *indecl. num.*, seventy. 56.
- sepultūra, -ae, *f.*, burial. G. 26.
- Sēquana, -ae, *m.*, the Seine, a river of Gaul. G. 1.
- Sēquani, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of eastern Gaul. G. 1.
- sequor, sequi, secūtus, follow, pursue, seek. 46.
- Servilius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman. 69.
- servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*, slavery, servitude. G. 11.
- Servius, -ī, *m.*, Servius Tullius, sixth king of Rome. 57.
- servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, save. 8.
- servus, -ī, *m.*, slave, servant. 5.
- seu, same as sive, or; seu . . . seu, *correl.*, either . . . or. G. 23.
- sex, *indecl. num.*, six. 56.
- sexāgintā, *indecl. num.*, sixty. G. 29.
- sextus, -a, -um, sixth. 56.
- sī, *conj.*, if. 41.
- sic, *adv.*, so, thus. 41.

- signum**, -ī, *n.*, sign, signal, military standard, image. 45.
- silentium**, -ī, *n.*, silence, quiet. 78.
- silva**, -ae, *f.*, forest. 3.
- simul**, *adv.*, at the same time; **simul atque**, *conj.*, as soon as. 64.
- sīn**, *conj.*, but if. G. 13.
- sine**, *prep. with abl.*, without. 22.
- singulī**, -ae, -a, one at a time, one by one. G. 6.
- sinister**, -tra, -trum, left (*not right*); **sinistra**, *f.* left hand. G. 25.
- sive**, *conj.*, or if; **sive . . . sive**, *correl.*, either . . . or. G. 12.
- socer**, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law. G. 12.
- socius**, -ī, *m.*, ally, associate. 32.
- sōl**, -is, *m.*, the sun. G. 1.
- solum**, -ī, *n.*, soil, ground, bottom. G. 11.
- sōlum**, *adv.*, alone, only. G. 12.
- sōlus**, -a, -um, alone. 66.
- solvō**, -ere, -lvī, -ūtus, loosen, release, fulfil, pay. 71.
- soror**, -ōris, *f.*, sister. G. 18.
- spatium**, -ī, *n.*, space, distance, space of time. G. 7.
- Sp.**, abbreviation for **Spurius**, a Roman praenomen. 66.
- spectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, look at, look toward, face. G. 1.
- spērō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hope, expect. 46.
- spēs**, *speī*, *f.*, hope. 45.
- spontis**, *gen. of defective noun*, *abl.*, **sponte**, *f.*, of one's own accord, voluntarily, by one's own influence. G. 9.
- statim**, *adv.*, immediately, at once. 35.
- statuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, set up, think, decide, pass judgment. G. 11.
- statūra**, -ae, *f.*, height, size, stature. 18.
- stīpendiārius**, -a, -um, tributary, dependent. G. 30.
- strepitus**, -ūs, *m.*, noise, din. 78.
- studeō**, -ēre, -uī, be eager for, be devoted to. G. 9.
- studium**, -ī, *n.*, zeal, eagerness, study. 70.
- sub**, *prep. with acc.*, under, towards; *with abl.*, under, at the foot of. G. 7.
- subdūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, draw up, withdraw. G. 22.
- subeō**, -īre, -ivī and -iī, -itūrus, come under, come up, undergo. G. 5.
- subiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw under, throw from under, subject, place near. G. 26.
- sublātus**. See **tollō**.
- sublevō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, lighten, raise up, assist. G. 16.
- submoveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, push back, dislodge, repulse. G. 25.
- subsidium**, -ī, *n.*, reserve, help, reinforcement. 70.
- subsistō**, -ere, -stitī, make a stand, halt. G. 15.
- subvehō**, -ere, -vexī, -vectus, bring up. G. 16.
- succēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, come up, take the place of, prosper. G. 24.
- sui**, **sibi**, **sē**, *refl. pron. of the 3d pers.*, him, himself, etc. 54.

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Lucius Cornelius Sulla, a great Roman general and statesman. G. 21.

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be. 14.

summa, -ae, *f.*, total, sum, whole. G. 29.

summus, -a, -um, highest, supreme, highest part of, top of; **summum**, -ī, *n.*, the top. 78.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, take. G. 7.

sūmptus, -ūs, *m.*, expense. G. 18.

superior, -ius, *comp. adj.*, higher, earlier, stronger. G. 10.

superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, overcome, surpass. 7.

supersum, -esse, -fui, be left over, remain, survive. G. 23.

suppetō, -ere, -ii, -itus (subpetō), be on hand, hold out. G. 3.

suppliciter, *adv.*, as a suppliant, as suppliants. G. 27.

supplicium, -ī, *n.*, punishment (by death). G. 19.

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus (subs-capiō), take up, undertake, begin. G. 3.

suspiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, suspicion. G. 4.

sustineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus (subs-teneō), withstand, endure, sustain, stop. G. 24.

suus, -a, -um, *refl. possessive adj.*, his, her, its, their own. 54.

T., abbreviation for Titus, a Roman praenomen. 66.

tabula, -ae, *f.*, board, writing tablet, list, record. G. 29.

taceō, -ēre, tacui, be silent, keep secret, conceal. G. 17.

tam, *adv.*, so, so much. 47.

tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, yet, still. 45.

tametsi, *conj.*, although. G. 30.

tandem, *adv.*, at length, finally. 10.

tantus, -a, -um, so great, so much. 65.

tardus, -a, -um, slow. 46.

Tarquinius, -ī, *m.*, name of the last royal family at Rome. 53.

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, a (missile) weapon, dart, missile. 10.

temperantia, -ae, *f.*, self-control, discretion. G. 19.

temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, control, control one's self, refrain. G. 7.

templum, -ī, *n.*, a temple. 52.

temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, try, attempt. G. 14.

tempus, -oris, *n.*, time. 31.

teneō, -ēre, -ui, hold, have, keep. 7.

ter, *adv.*, three times. 56.

terra, -ae, *f.*, land. G. 30.

terreō, -ēre, terrui, -itus, frighten. 8.

terror, -ōris, *m.*, terror, panic, alarm. 30.

tertius, -a, -um, third. 47.

testis, -is, *m. and f.*, witness. G. 14.

Tiberinus, -ī, *m.*, the Tiber. 66.

Tiberis, -is, *m.*, the Tiber. 23.

Tigurinus, -a, -um, of the Tigurini, one of the four cantons of the Helvetians. G. 12.

timeō, -ēre, timui, fear. 6.

timidus, -a, -um, timid. 9.

timor, -ōris, *m.*, fear, alarm. G. 22.

tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, bear, endure, hold out. G. 28.

- tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus**, lift up, elate, take, take away, destroy. G. 5.
- Tolōsātēs, -um, m., the inhabitants of Tolosa.** G. 10.
- tōtus, -a, -um**, all, the whole. total. 41.
- trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus**, hand over, surrender, relate. 43.
- trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (trāns-dūcō)**, lead across, transfer. 49.
- trāgula, -ae, f., a Gallic javelin.** G. 26.
- trānō, -āre, -āvi**, swim across, swim over. 66.
- trāns, prep. with acc., across, on the other side of.** 20.
- trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus**, go across, cross, go over. 54.
- trānsfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus**, pierce through. G. 25.
- trecentī, -ae, -a**, three hundred. G. 29.
- trēs, tria**, three. 38.
- tribūnus, -ī, m., a tribune, a magistrate elected by the plebs to watch over the interests of the common people.** 74.
- tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus**, grant, render, attribute, ascribe. G. 13.
- trīdūm, -ī, n., a period of three days, three days.** G. 26.
- trīgintā, indecl. num., thirty.** 26.
- triplex, Gen., triplicis, adj., three-fold.** G. 24.
- Troucillus, -ī, m., Gaius Valerius Troucillus, a Gaul.** G. 19.
- tū, tui, tibi, tē, pers. pron., thou, you.** 61.
- Tulingī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe.** G. 5.
- Tullus, -ī, m., Tullus Hostilius, third king of Rome.** 35.
- tum, adv., then.** G. 17.
- turba, -ae, f., tumult, throng, crowd, mob.** 59.
- tuus, tua, tuum, thy, thine, your yours.** 57.
- ubi, rel. and interrog. adv., where, when.** 55.
- ulciscor, -ī, ultus**, punish, avenge. G. 12.
- ūllus, -a, -um, any.** 74.
- ulterior, -ius, comp. adj., farther.** G. 7.
- ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, most remote, last.** 60.
- ūnā, adv., together with, along with.** G. 5.
- unde, rel. and interrog. adv., whence, from which.** G. 28.
- ūndecim, indecl. num., eleven.** 56.
- ūndēvigintī, indecl. num., nineteen.** G. 8.
- undique, adv., from every side, on all sides, everywhere.** 72.
- ūnus, -a, -um, one, alone.** 38.
- urbs, urbis, f., city.** 23.
- usque, adv., all the way, even to, all the time, even till.** 70.
- ūsus, -ūs, m., use, practice, experience, advantage; ex ūsū, to the advantage of.** G. 30.
- ut, with indic., when, as; with subjunc., that, in order that, so that, how.** 38.
- uter, utra, utrum, interrog. adj., which (of two)?** 48.
- uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both.** 64.
- utī, same as ut, that, so that, in order that, how.** G. 5.

ūtor, -ī, **ūsus**, use, employ. 48.
utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides, on each side. 43.
utrum, *conjunc.*, whether ; *some-times to be omitted in translation*. 63.
uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife. 53.
vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, be unoccu-
 pied, lie waste. G. 28.
vadum, -ī, *n.*, ford, shallow place,
 shoal. G. 6.
vagor, -ārī, -ātus, roam about,
 wander. G. 2.
valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, be strong,
 prevail, be well. 57.
Valerius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.
 G. 19.
vāllum, -ī, *n.*, palisade, rampart,
 wall. G. 26.
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ravage,
 devastate. G. 11.
vectigal, -ālis, *n.*, tax, tribute,
 revenue. G. 18.
vehō, -ere, **vexī**, **vectus**, carry ;
pass., ride. 70.
Veii, -ōrum, *m.*, a city of ancient
 Italy. 48.
vel, *conj. and adv.*, or, or even,
 even; **vel . . . vel**, *correl.*,
 either . . . or. 66.
veniō, -īre, **vēnī**, **ventūrus**, come.
 30.
Verbigenus, -ī, *m.*, a canton of the
 Helvetii. G. 27.
verbum, -ī, *n.*, word. 50.
vereor, -ērī, -itus, fear, respect,
 dread. 46.
vergō, -ere, slope, lie, be situated.
 G. 1.
vergobretus, -ī, *m.*, vergobret,

*chief magistrate of the Haedu-
 ans*. G. 16.
versor, -ārī, -ātus, move about,
 dwell, be engaged in. 68.
vertō, -ere, **vertī**, **versus**, turn.
 76.
Verucloetius, -ī, *m.*, an Helvetian.
 G. 7.
vērus, -a, -um, true. G. 18.
vesper, -erī, *m.*, evening. G. 26.
vester, -tra, -trum, your. 43.
veterānus, -a, -um, veteran. G. 24.
vetus, *Gen.*, **veteris**, *adj.*, old,
 former. G. 13.
vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, harass,
 annoy, ravage. G. 14.
via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, street. 3.
victor, -ōris, *m.*, conqueror, vic-
 tor. 28.
victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory. 10.
vīcus, -ī, *m.*, village. 13.
videō, -ēre, **vidī**, **vīsus**, see ; *pass.*,
 be seen, seem. 6.
vigilia, -ae, *f.*, a watch. *The Ro-
 mans divided the night into four
 watches from sunset to sunrise*.
 G. 12.
vīgintī, *indecl. num.*, twenty. 51.
vincō, -ere, **vīcī**, **victus**, conquer.
 46.
vinculum, -ī, *n.*, chain, bond. 72.
vir, -ī, *m.*, man, hero. 12.
virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*, manliness, brav-
 ery, valor, virtue. 42.
vis, **vis**, *f.*, strength, force, vio-
 lence. 51.
vīta, -ae, *f.*, life. 5.
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, shun, avoid.
 G. 20.
vīvō, -ere, **vixī**, **victūrus**, live, be
 alive. 46.

vix, *adv.*, hardly, scarcely, with difficulty. 77.

vōbis, *dat. and abl. of vōs*.

vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *call*. 6.

Vocontii, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe south of the Allobroges. G. 10.

volō, **velle**, **volui**, *will, wish, be willing*. 55.

Volscī, -ōrum, *m.* a powerful race akin to the Latins. 69.

voluntās, -ātis, *f.*, will, good-will, consent. G. 7.

vōs, *pers. pron.*, you, yourselves. 59.

voveō, -ēre, **vōvī**, **vōtus**, *vow*. 68.

vulgus (or **volgus**), -ī, *n.*, crowd, mass, common people. G. 20.

vulnerō, -āre, **āvī**, -ātus, *wound*. 10.

vulnus (or **volnus**), -eris, *n.*, wound. 47.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

Proper names are not given in this list unless the English is different from the Latin form.

- a, an;** *no corresponding Latin word; omit.*
- able;** **be able, can,** possum, posse, potui; *with inf.*
- account of (on);** *use the simple abl. of cause; ob, with acc.; on account of his age, per aetatem.*
- across,** trāns; *with acc.*
- activity,** industria, -ae, *f.*
- adorn,** ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
- advise,** moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus; *followed by ut or nē with subjunc.*
- after, prep.,** post, *with acc.; conj., postquam, with indic.*
- afterwards,** postea; *post.*
- again,** iterum.
- against,** in, *with acc. If a verb compounded with in- is used, it may be followed by the dat.*
- aid,** auxilium, -ī, *n.*
- Alban,** Albānus, -a, -um.
- all, every,** omnis, -e; **all, entire,** tōtus, -a, -um; *Gen., tōtius.*
- ally,** socius, -ī, *m.*
- alone,** sōlus, -a, -um; *Gen., sōlius.*
- already,** iam.
- also,** idem, eadem, idem; *item.*
- although,** cum, *with subjunc.*
- altogether,** omnīnō.
- ambassador,** lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
- among,** apud, *with acc.; in, with abl.; talk among themselves, inter sē conloquī.*
- and,** et; -que; atque.
- any, subst.,** quisquam, quicquam; **any one,** aliquis; *with negative, quisquam.*
- approach,** accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus; *followed by ad with acc.*
- arise,** orior, orīrī, ortus. *Apart from the pres. inf., orior is of the third conjugation.*
- arms,** arma, -ōrum, *n.*
- army,** exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
- art,** ars, artis, *f.*
- as, rel. pron.,** quī, quae, quod; *rel. adv., ut; as soon as, simul atque, with indic.*
- ascertain,** cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus.
- ask,** rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *with acc.; petō, -ere, -ivī, -itus, followed by acc. of the thing and ab with abl. of the person; or by ut or nē with subjunc.*
- at; use the locative if there is one; at once, statim; at this time, hōc tempore; at, after verbs of motion, in, with acc.**
- attack, noun,** impetus, -ūs, *m.; verb, impetum facere in, with acc.*

attempt, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, *with inf.*

auxiliaries, auxilia, -ōrum, *n.*

away, ā, ab, *with abl.*

ax, ferrum, -ī, *n.*

bad, malus, -a, -um.

band (of troops), manus, -ūs, *f.*

bank (of a stream), rīpa, -ae, *f.*

battle, pugna, -ae, *f.*; proelium, -ī, *n.*; **the battle is fought**, pug-nātur, *impers.*

be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus; **being**, *indicating progressive action, omit and use right tense of the main verb*; **be, been**, *as auxiliary of the passive voice, omit*; **be in command**, praesum, -esse, -fuī, *with dat.*

bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.

beast of burden, iumentum, -ī, *n.*

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

because, quod, *with indic. or subjunc.*; cum, *with subjunc.*; **because of**, ob, *with acc.*; or use *simple abl. of cause.*

become, be made, fiō, fierī, factus.

before, *prep.*, ante, *with acc.*; *adv.*, ante; *conj.*, ante quam, priusquam.

begin; **did begin**, coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *with inf.*

behalf of (in), prō, *with abl.*

better, *adj.*, melior, -ius; *adv.*, melius.

big, magnus, -a, -um.

blame, culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

body, corpus, -oris, *n.*

bold, audāx, *Gen.*, audācis.

boldly, audācter.

book, liber, -brī, *m.*

booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*

borders, finēs, -ium, *m.*

both, uterque, utraque, utrumque *on both sides*, utrimque.

boy, puer, -ī, *m.*

brave, fortis, -e.

bravely, fortiter.

bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*

brief, brevis, -e.

bring, adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus; **bring war against**, bellum in-ferre, *with dat.*

brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*

build, aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

building, aedificium, -ī, *n.*

burn, *trans.*, incendō, -ere, -ndī. -ēnsus; **be consumed by fire**, cōnflagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus.

but, *conj.*, sed.

by, *in phrases denoting means or cause, use the simple abl.*; *in phrase showing the agent of a passive verb, ab, with abl.*; *in phrase showing agent with future passive participle, use dat.*

call, summon, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; **call, give a name or title**, appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

camp, castra, -ōrum, *n.*

can, be able, possum, posse, potuī, *with inf.*

captive, captīvus, -ī, *m.*

carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; **carry on war**, bellum gerere.

cattle, pecus, -oris, *n.*

cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*

certain (a), quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam).

character, ingenium, -ī, *n.*, or mōrēs, -um, *m.*

child, puer, -erī, *m.*

citizen, cīvis, -is, *m. and f.*

city, urbs, urbis, *f.*

collect, cōgō, -ere, cōgēī, cōāctus.

column, marching column of troops, agmen, -inis, *n.*

come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus.

command, be in command of, praesum, praeesse, praefui, *with dat.*

common people, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*

compel, cōgō, -ere, cōgēī, cōāctus, *with acc. and inf.*

complain, queror, querī, questus.

conquer, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.

consul, cōsul, -ulis, *m.*

consulship; in the consulship of; *put name of the consul in the abl. absolute with cōsule.*

contend, contendō, -ere, -ndī, -ntum.

country, as opposed to the city, rūs, rūris, *n.*; **native land**, patria, -ae, *f.*

courage, animus, -ī, *m.*, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

cowardly, ignāvus, -a, -um.

crime, scelus, -eris, *n.*

cross, cross over, trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.

cruel, crūdēlis, -e.

danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*

dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um.

dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus, *with inf.*

daughter, filia, -ae, *f.*; *dat. abl. pl., filiabus.*

day, diēs, diēī, *m.*

death, mors, mortis, *f.*

debt, debts, aes aliēnum, aeris aliēnī, *n.*

decide, dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus.

declare, indicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictus.

deep, altus, -a, -um.

defeat, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *or* vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.

defend, dēfendō, -ere, -ndī, -ēnsus.

depart, proficiscor, -ī, -fectus, *or* excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *or* abeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.

desert, dēserō, -ere, -uī, -rtus.

despair, dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

destroy, dēlēō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.

die, morior, morī, mortuus *and* moritūrus.

discretion, sapientia, -ae, *f.*

disposition, ingenium, -ī, *n.*

ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*

do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; **be done**, fiō, fierī, factus; *when do is the auxiliary in emphatic and negative expressions, omit.*

doubt, dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

drive, agō, agere, ēgī, āctus; **drive out**, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus; **drive off** (flocks), agō.

easily, facile (facilius, facillimē).

eight, octō.

Elder (the), Prīscus.

elect, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

enemy, hostis, -is, *m.*; **personal enemy**, inimīcus, -ī, *m.*

enlist, nōmen dō, -are, dedī; *pl., nōmina dare, etc.*

enough, satis.

establish, instituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtus.

even, *adv.*, etiam.

excellent, ēgregius, -a, -um.

faith, fidēs, -eī, *f.*

fall, cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.

famous, clārus, -a, -um.

far, *adv.*, longē.

farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*

father, pater, -tris, *m.*

fear, *verb.*, timeō, -ēre, -uī; *or*
vereor, -ērī, -itus.

fear, *noun*, metus, -ūs, *m.*

fellow-citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.*

fertile, ferāx, *Gen.*, -ācis.

few, paucī, -ae, -a.

field, ager, -grī, *m.*

fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre.

fifteen, quīndecim.

fight, *verb.*, pugnō, -āre, -āvī,
-ātūrus.

finally, tandem.

fine, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

fire, ignis, -is, *m.*

first, prīmus, -a, -um.

flee, fugiō, -ere, fugī, fugitūrus.

flight (*put to*), fugō, -āre, -āvī,
-ātus.

flock, pecus, -oris, *n.*

follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus.

food, cibus, -ī, *m.*

foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*

foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, *m.*

for, *preposition*, in phrase showing
a cause, use simple *abl.*; in
phrase showing how long, use
simple *acc.*; in phrase showing
object of an act implied
in another noun, omit and use
gen.; in phrase showing in-
direct object, use *dat.*; in phrase
showing end of motion after

verbs of going and coming
ad, with *acc.*, or in, with *acc.*;
omitted before domum, rūs, and
names of cities.

for, *conj.*, nam.

forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*; *or*
manūs, -uum, *f.*

forest, silva, -ae, *f.*

former, prior, prius.

fortify, mūniō, -ire, -īvī, -ītus.

fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*

forty, quadrāgintā.

forum, -ī, *n.*

four, quattuor.

free, *adj.*, liber, -era, -erum.

free, *verb.*, liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

freely, liberē.

frequently, saepē.

friend, amicus, -ī, *m.*

frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

from, ab, ex, or dē, with *abl.*;
omit before names of cities, etc.;
defend from, dēfendere ab; **free**
from, liberāre followed by simple
abl.; **from** (*getting possession*),
quōminus, with *subjunc.*

garden, hortus, -ī, *m.*

Gaul, the country, Gallia, -ae, *f.*;
one of the people, Gallus, -ī, *m.*

general, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*

German, Germānus, -ī, *m.*

get possession of, potior, -īrī,
-ītus, with *abl.*

girl, puella, -ae, *f.*

give, dō, -are, dedī, datus

glad, laetus, -a, -um.

go, eō, ire, ivī, itūrus.

good, bonus, -a, -um.

govern, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus.

grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*

grandfather, avus, -ī, *m.*
great, magnus, -a, -um.
greatest, maximus, -a, -um.
greatness, magnitūdō, -inis, *f.*
guard, garrison, praesidium, -ī, *n.*

happy, laetus, -a, -um.
hasten, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus;
 or contendō, -ere, -ndī.

hatred, odium, -ī, *n.*

Haughty (the), *epithet of the last*
Tarquin, Superbus, -a, -um.

have, habeo, -ēre, -uī, -itus; esse
with dat. of the possessor;
when have (has, had) is merely
an auxiliary used in forming
tenses of completed action, trans-
late have by using the tense in-
dicated of the Latin verb; as
auxiliary in expressions of
necessity, use the passive peri-
phrastic conjugation.

he, usually expressed in the per-
 sonal ending of the verb; is, ille,
 hic.

head, caput, -itis, *n.*

hear, audiō, -īre, -ivī, -itus.

heavy, gravis, -e.

help, auxilium, -ī, *n.*

herd, pecus, -oris, *n.*

high, altus, -a, -um.

hill, collis, -is, *m.*

him, use the gen., dat., acc., or abl.,
 as the syntax requires, of is, hic,
 ille; or suī, sibi, sē, if reflexive.

himself, intensive pron., ipse, -a,
 -um; reflexive pron., suī, sibi, sē.

hindrance (without), liberē.

his, referring to the subject of the
 verb, suus, -a, -um; not refer-
 ring to the subject of the verb,

eius or illius; commonly to be
 omitted.

hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī.

home, domus, -ūs, *f.*

hope, verb, spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
 with inf. and acc.

hope, noun, spēs, -eī, *f.*

horse, equus, -ī, *m.*

horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*

hostage, obses, -idis, *m. and f.*

how, quōmodo.

hundred, centum; **two hundred**,
 ducentī, -ae, -a.

hurl, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.

if, sī.

illustrious, clārus, -a, -um.

immediately, statim.

in, in, with abl.; introducing
 phrase showing in what respect,
 or precise time, or method, use
 the simple abl. without in; in
 war, in bellō; in the mean-
 time, interim; in Rome, Rōmae.

increase, trans., augeō, -ēre, auxī,
 auctus.

inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m.*

injury, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

intend; use the right tense of the
 future active periphrastic conju-
 gation.

into, in, with acc.; omit before
 rūs.

joy, gaudium, -ī, *n.*

Julius, Iūlius, -ī, *m.*

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre.

keep off, arceo, -ēre, -uī; dēfendō,
 -ere, -ndī, -ēnsus.

kill, occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus.

king, *rēx, rēgis, m.*

kingdom, *rēgnum, -ī, n.*

knight, *eques, -itis, m.*

know, *intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus; or perf. of cognōscō, cognōvī.*

lake, *lacus, -ūs, m.*

large, *magnus, -a, -um.*

last, *adj., ultimus, -a, -um.*

Latin, *Latīnus, -a, -um.*

law, *lēx, lēgis, f.*

lead, *dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus; lead out, ēdūcō.*

leader, *dux, ducis, m.*

learn, *cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, with inf. and acc.*

leave, abandon, *relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus; dēserō, -ere, -uī, -rtus; leave, go out of, excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, with ex and the abl.; set out from, proficīscor, -scī, -fectus.*

legion, *legiō, -ōnis, f.*

less, *adv., minus.*

lest, *nē, with subjunc.*

let, *auxiliary in exhortations, wishes, etc.; use subjunc. of principal verb.*

letter, epistle, *litterae, -ārum, f.*

lieutenant, *lēgātus, -ī, m.*

life, *vīta, -ae, f.*

likewise (= the same man), *īdem, eadem, idem; likewise, in the same manner, item.*

lion, *leō, -ōnis, m.*

little, *parvus, -a, -um; little, adv., paulō.*

live, be alive, *vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctūrus; live, dwell, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus.*

long, *longus, -a, -um: long, adv.*

of time, diū; no longer, nō iam.

lose, *āmittō, -ere, -īsī, -issus.*

love, *amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*

make, *faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; make, appoint, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; be made, fiō, fierī, factus; make war on, bellum inferre, with dat.*

man, *vir, virī, m.; homō, -inis, m. and f.*

many, *multus, -a, -um; very many, plūrimī, -ae, -a.*

marriage, *mātrimōnium, -ī, n.; in marriage, in mātrimōnium.*

marsh, *palūs, -ūdis, f.*

master, *dominus, -ī, m.; master, teacher, magister, -trī, m.*

may, *use subjunc. of the verb with which "may" is the auxiliary.*

meantime (in the), *interim.*

message, *nūntius, -ī, m.*

messenger, *nūntius, -ī, m.*

might, *auxiliary in certain subordinate clauses; use subjunc. of the verb.*

mile, *mille passūs or mille passuum; pl., milia passuum.*

military, *militāris, -e.*

mob, *turba, -ae, f.*

money, *pecūnia, -ae, f.*

month, *mēnsis, -is, m.*

more, *auxiliary adv. used in forming comparative degree, use comparative of the word modified; more (in quantity), plūs, with gen.; more (in number), plūrēs, -a.*

mother, *māter, -tris, f.*

mountain, *mōns, montis, m.*

move away (*from one place to another*), *migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus.*

multitude, *multitūdō, -inis, f.*

must, *to express necessity use the passive periphrastic conjugation.*

my, *meus, -a, -um.*

name, *nōmen, -inis, n.*

narrow, *angustus, -a, -um.*

native land, *patria, -ae, f.*

near, *prope, adv. and prep. with acc.; ad, with acc.; nearer, propius.*

neighboring, *finitimus, -a, -um.*

neither . . . nor, *neque . . . neque.*

nevertheless, *tamen.*

night, *nox, noctis, f.*

no, *adj., nullus, -a, -um, Gen., nullius; no one, nēmō; no longer, nōn iam; no, opposite of yes, nōn, minimē.*

nor, *neque.*

not, *nōn; with volitive or optative subjunc., nē; or not, in dependent questions, necne.*

now, *nunc.*

number, *numerus, -ī, m.*

obey, *pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, with dat.*

of, *in phrase denoting possessor, use gen.; in phrase indicating whole of which a part is mentioned, use gen.; in phrase describing a noun, use gen. or abl.; in phrase expressing cause, use abl.; of, concerning, dē, with abl.*

often, *saepe.*

on, *in, with abl.; on account of, use abl. of cause; on account of age, per aetātem; in phrase, indicating time, use abl.; (make an attack) on, in, with acc.*

once (upon a time), *ōlim; at once, statim.*

one, *ūnus, -a, -um; one (of two), alter, -era, -erum, Gen., alterius.*

or, *aut; or, in alternative questions, an; or not, in dependent questions, necne.*

order, *imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, with dat. and volitive subst. clause; iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, with inf. and acc.; in order that, ut, with subjunc.*

other, *alius, -a, -ud; the other (of two), alter, -era, -erum.*

ought, *use the passive periphrastic conjugation to express necessity.*

our, *noster, -tra, -trum.*

outcry, *clāmor, -ōris, m.*

out of, *ē, ex, with abl.; out of that place, inde.*

overcome, *superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.*

own, *their own, suus, -a, -um.*

part, *pars, partis, f.*

pay, *solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus.*

peace, *pāx, pācis, f.; in time of peace, in pāce.*

people, *populus, -ī, m.*

permit, *patior, patī, passus, with inf. and acc.*

persuade, *persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, with dat. and volitive subst. clause.*

pillage, *diripiō, -ere, -uī, -eptus.*

- pitch a camp**, castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.
place, *noun*, locus, -ī, *m.*; *pl.*, locī, *m.*, and loca, *n.*; **from that place**, inde.
place, *verb*, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.
plan, *noun*, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
please, be pleasing, placeō, -ēre, -uī, *with dat.*
plebeians, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
plunder, diripiō, -ere, -uī, -eptus.
poor, wretched, miser, -era, -erum.
(get) possession of, potior, -īrī, -itus, *with abl.*
power, potestās, -ātis, *f.*; **rule**, empire, imperium, -ī, *n.*
powerful, potēns, *Gen.*, -entis.
praise, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
presence, in the presence of, apud, *with acc.*
prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
prison, carcer, -eris, *m.*
prisoner, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
private, privātus, -a, -um.
property, rēs, rei, *f.*; bona, -ōrum, *n.*
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
punish, pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -itus.
pursue, sequor, sequī, secūtus.
put to flight, fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
quickly, celeriter (celerius, celerimē).
race, gēns, gentis, *f.*
receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
recognize, cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus.
recover, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
refuse, recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
reign, rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus.
relate, narrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, -sūrus.
renown, glōria, -ae, *f.*; fāma, -ae, *f.*
report, referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus.
republic, rēspūblica, reīpūblicae, *f.*
reputation, fāma, -ae, *f.*
resist, resistō, -ere, restitī, *with dat.*
return, give back, reddō, -ere, redidī, reditus; **return, go back**, redeō, -īre, -īī, -itūrus.
reward, *noun*, praemium, -ī, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*
rights, iūs, iūris; *pl.*, iūra, iūrum, *n.*
river, fluvius, -ī, *m.*; flūmen, -inis, *n.*
road, via, -ae, *f.*
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*
rule, rule over, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus.
run, currō, -ēre, cucurrī, cursūrus.
Sabine, Sabīnus, -a, -um.
sacred rite, sacrum, -ī, *n.*
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
same, idem, eadem, idem.
save, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
say, dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus, *with inf. and acc.*
second time (a), iterum.
see, videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
seek, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus.
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *of land*; **of individuals**, dēpre-

- nendō, -ere, -ndī, -ēnsus; *or* capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m*.
send, mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus.
set fire to, incendō, -ere, -ndī, -ēnsus.
set free, liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
set out, start, proficiscor, proficisci, profectus.
seven, septem.
several, aliquot.
severely, graviter.
shall, *auxiliary of future tense; use the future of the main verb.*
sharply, ācriter (ācrius, ācerimē).
shepherd, pāstor, -ōris, *m*.
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n*.
short, brevis, -e.
should, *modal auxiliary expressing ideas which are generally to be expressed by the Latin subjunc.*
shout, *noun*, clāmor, -ōris, *m*.; *verb*, clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.
sides (on both), utrimque.
six, sex.
sixteen, sēdecim.
slaughter, caedēs, -is, *f*.
slave, servus, -ī, *m*.
slay, occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus.
slow, tardus, -a, -um.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
so, sic, ita; **so that**, ut; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um.
soldier, miles, -itis, *m*.
some one, something, aliquis, aliquid; **some**, adj., aliquī, aliqua, aliquod.
son, filius, -ī, *m*.
- soon**, mox; **as soon as**, simul atque; **sooner than**, priusquam
speak, dicō, -ere, dīxi, dictus.
spear, hasta, -ae, *f*.
state, civitās, -ātis, *f*.; rēspūblica, reīpūblicae, *f*.
stature, statūra, -ae, *f*.
stone, lapis, -idis, *m*.
story, fābula, -ae, *f*.
stream, fluvius, -ī, *m*.; flūmen, -inis, *n*.
street, via, -ae, *f*.
subdue, pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
such, is, ea, id, *followed by descriptive clause.*
suffer, patior, pati, passus.
summer, aestās, -ātis, *f*.
supply, cōpia, -ae, *f*.
surpass, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
surround, circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus.
swamp, palūs, -ūdis, *f*.
swift, celer, -eris, -ere.
sword, gladius, -ī, *m*.; ferrum, -ī, *n*.
take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
talk, conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus.
tall, altus, -a, -um.
Tarquin, Tarquinius, -ī, *m*.
teacher, magister, -trī, *m*.
tell, nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
temple, templum, -ī, *n*.
ten, decem.
terrify, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
territory, finēs, -ium, *m*.
than, quam.
that, conj., *after verbs of willing and wishing*, ut, *with subjunc.*; *after verbs of saying and thinking, omit and use inf. and acc.*; *after verbs of fearing, nē, with*

- subjunc.*; *introducing clause of result*, *ut*; *after negatived verbs of doubting*, *quīn*, *with subjunc.*
- that**, *adj.*, *is*, *ea*, *id*; *ille*, *illa*, *illud*; **to that place**, *eō*,
- the**; *omit*; *no corresponding Latin word.*
- their**, *when referring to the subject of the verb*, *suus*, *-a*, *-um*; *otherwise*, *eōrum*, *eārum*, *illōrum*, *illārum*.
- themselves**, *reflexive*, *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*; *intensive*, *ipsī*, *ipsae*.
- then**, *after that*, *deinde*.
- thence**, *inde*.
- there**, *in that place*, *ibi*; **there is**, *there are*, *est*, *sunt*.
- they**, *usually expressed only in the personal ending of the verb*; *ii*, *ea*, *ea*; *illī*, *illae*, *illa*.
- think**, *putō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātus*.
- third**, *tertius*, *-a*, *-um*.
- this**, *is*, *ea*, *id*; *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*.
- thousand**, *mille*, *pl.*, *milia*, *with gen. of the whole*.
- three**, *trēs*, *tria*.
- throughout**, *per*, *with acc.*
- thus**, *sic*.
- Tiber**, *Tiberis*, *-is*, *m*.
- time**, *tempus*, *-oris*, *n*.
- timid**, *timidus*, *-a*, *-um*.
- to**, *designating indirect object*, *use dat.*; *after verbs of going and coming*, *ad*, *in*, *with acc.*, *omitted before names of cities and domum and rūs*; **to that place**, *eō*.
- to**, *sign of the English inf.*; *after verbs of willing and wishing*, *ut (nē)*, *with subjunc.*; *when Eng-*
- lish inf. designates another act of the same subject*, *use Latin inf.*; *when English inf. expresses purpose*, *ut (nē)*, *with subjunc.*
- to-day**, *hodiē*.
- too**, *nimum*.
- town**, *oppidum*, *-ī*, *n*.
- traitor**, *prōditor*, *-ōris*, *m*.
- treaty**, *foedus*, *-eris*, *n*.
- tribe**, *gēns*, *gentis*, *f*.
- troops**, *cōpiae*, *-ārum*, *f*.
- trust**, *crēdō*, *-ere*, *crēdidī*, *crēditus*, *with dat.*; *fidem habēre*, *with dat.*
- try**, *cōnor*, *-ārī*, *-ātus*, *with inf.*
- twelve**, *duodecim*.
- twenty**, *vigintī*, *not declined*.
- two**, *duo*, *duae*, *duo*; **two hundred**, *ducentī*, *-ae*, *-a*.
- unfriendly**, *inimicus*, *-a*, *-um*.
- unite**, *coniungō*, *-erē*, *-iūnxī*, *-iūnc-*
tus, *with acc. and dat.*
- (be) unwilling**, *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōluī*, *with inf.*
- upon**; **(make attack) upon**, *in*, *with acc.*
- us**, *nōs*.
- use**, *ūtor*, *ūtī*, *ūsus*, *with abl.*; **used (to fight)**, *showing customary action*, *express by imperfect tense*.
- valor**, *virtūs*, *-ūtis*, *f*.
- value**, *noun*, *pretium*, *-ī*, *n*.
- very**; *use superl. of word modified by very*.
- victor**, *victor*, *-ōris*, *m*.
- village**, *vicus*, *-ī*, *m*.
- Volscians**, *Volscī*, *-ōrum*, *m*.

wage (war), gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.

wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*; **walls (of a city)**, moenia, -ium, *n.*

war, bellum, -ī, *n.*

water, aqua, -ae, *f.*

we, nōs; *but usually expressed only by personal ending of the verb.*

weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*

well, adv., bene.

what, quid? *adj.*, quī, quae, quod?

when, cum, *with indic. or subjunc. according to the sense*; ubi, *with indic.*

where, ubi; **place where**, locus in quō, locus quō, *or locus ubi.*

wherefore, quārē.

whether, utrum, num, -ne.

which, rel., quī, quae, quod; **which (of two)**, *interrog.*, uter, utra, utrum? *Gen.*, utrius.

white, albus, -a, -um.

who, **whom**, **whose**, quī, quae, quod, *etc.*

whole, tōtus, -a, -um; *Gen.*, tōtius.

why, cūr?

wicked, malus, -a, -um.

wide, lātus, -a, -um.

wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*

wild beast, fera, -ae, *f.*

will, *auxiliary of future tense*; *use future tense in Latin.*

winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*

wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*

wish, volō, velle, voluī.

with, *in phrase showing the instrument or means of an act, use the simple abl.; in phrase describing a noun, use abl. or gen.; in phrases denoting association, cum with abl.*

withdraw, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *with acc. of the reflexive pronoun.*

within, in, *with abl.; in expressions denoting time within which, use abl. without a prep.*

without, sine, *with abl.*; **without hindrance**, liberē.

woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*; **mulier**, -eris, *f.*

word, verbum, -ī, *n.*

work, *noun*, opus, -eris, *n.*

work, *verb*, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus.

would, *auxiliary used to express ideas which are generally expressed in Latin by the subjunc., or by a future infinitive.*

wound, *noun*, vulnus, -eris, *n.*

wound, *verb*, vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

wretched, miser, -era, -erum.

write, scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus.

wrong, *noun*, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

year, annus, -ī, *m.*

yes, sīc, ita.

young, *adj.*, iuvenis, -e; **young man**, iuvenis, -is, *m.*

youth (a), iuvenis, -is, *m.*

INDEX TO THE LESSONS

Numbers refer to sections, unless p. (page) precedes. See also references to the lessons in the vocabulary.

A

ā or **ab**, choice between, p. 35, ftn.

Ablative uses, see summary, p. 135; 406.

Abstract nouns defined, 1, I.

-ābus, dative and ablative in, p. 25, ftn.

ac or **atque**, p. 133, ftn.

Accent, 17; of gen. of **-ius** nouns, p. 21, ftn.

Accompaniment, 172, n., 3, p. 177.

Accusative uses, see summary, p. 104; 396.

ācer, declined, 154; p. 216.

ad, with gerund and gerundive, 325; 348, n., p. 198.

Adjectives,

agreement, 28 f.; with infinitive, 261, n.; predicate, 36; 165, n. 2, p. 176; p. 208, n. 3.

as substantives, 124.

comparison of, 157 ff.

declension: first and second, 87; p. 215; irregular, 256; third, 145, 153; comparatives, 161; p. 215 f.

defined, 1, IV.

interrogative, 340.

possessive, 297.

with dative, 282.

Adverbs, 1, V.

comparison, 168 f.

how formed, 166 f.

in English corresponding to Latin adjectives, p. 179, n.

Adversative clause, 337.

Agent, 321 and ftn. 2.

Agreement,

according to sense, 300, n. 2, p. 191.

adjectives, 29, 36; 165, n. 2, p. 176; 385, n. 3, p. 208.

noun in apposition, 110.

participle in compound tenses, 112; p. 89, ftn. 2; 165, n. 2, p. 176.

participles, 241 f.

relative pronouns, 231.

verbs, 20; p. 191, n. 2.

ALBA LONGA DESTROYED, p. 186.

aliquis, declined, 363.

alius, declined, 256.

alter, declined, 256.

ANCUS MARCIUS, FOURTH KING OF ROME, p. 187.

Answers, 342.

Antecedent, 1, II.

Anticipatory subjunctive, 356.

Apodosis, 221.

Apposition, 110.

Article, 1, IV; p. 12, ftn.

Asking, construction after verbs
of, p. 181, n. 3.

Attributive use of participles,
241.

audiō, conjugation, 173; 200; 205;
215 f.; 234; 238; 244; p. 225.

B

Base, defined, p. 42, ftn.

BATTLE OF LAKE REGILLUS, p.
205.

BATTLE OF THE ALLIA, p. 212.

BATTLE OF THE HORATII, p. 184.

C

capiō, conjugated, 176 f.

Cardinal numerals, 209; 306.

Case of relative, 231.

Cases in Latin, 22.

causā, with genitive, p. 149, ftn.

Causal clauses, 378.

Cause, ablative of, 82.

Clauses, uses of, 12, d.

adversative, 337.

anticipatory, 356.

causal, 378.

conditional, 220 f.; 253.

descriptive, 303 f.

indirect questions, 360 f.

purpose, 287.

relative, 232; 303; 336; 337; 268.

result, 291; 310.

situation, 315.

substantive, indirect question,
360 f.; *quod*, 393, d; *quā*,
375; *quōminus*, 380; *ut*, 405.

temporal, 315; 350; 356.

cōgō, with infinitive, p. 91, ftn. 2.

Commands, 254, c; 399, c.

**COMPACT BETWEEN THE LEAD-
ERS**, p. 182.

Comparatives, declension of, 161

Comparison of adjectives, 157 ff.

Comparison of adverbs, 166 f.

Comparison without *quam*, 171.

Complementary infinitive, 261.

predicate word after, 261, n.

Compound verbs with dative, 263;
with accusative, 263, a; 396.

Conclusions, mood in, 221; 254; in
indirect discourse, 399.

Conditional periods, 221; 253 f.

Conditional sentences, 220 ff.; 253;
in indirect discourse, 400 f.

Conjugations, 49; *see* first, second,
etc.

Conjunctions, 1, VII.

Contracted perfects, p. 188, n. 2.

Cum, preposition, when used, p. 177,
n. 3; as enclitic, p. 188, n. 3.

Cum-clauses, *see* summary, p.
129.

Customary action, 64.

D

Dative uses, *see* summary, p.
142.

Declension, 40; first, 71; second,
72, 74, 84; third, 118, 136;
fourth, 181; fifth, 189.

Degree of difference, 311.

Demonstratives, *is*, 194; *hic*, 265;
idem, 278; *ille*, 285.

Denominative verbs, 397, E.

Dependent clause, 12, c.

Deponent verbs, 250.

Descriptive clauses, 303 f.; 309.

Descriptive genitive or ablative,
109.

Determinative clauses, 303.

deus, declined, p. 144, ftn.

dīc, p. 84, ftn.

Direct object, 37.
Division of syllables, 15.
dō, unlike verbs of first conjugation, p. 21, ftn.
domus, declined, 181, a; 314.
Doubt, construction after verbs of, 379.
dūc, p. 84, ftn.
dum, "while," p. 214, n. 2.
duo, declined, 209.
Duration, accusative of, 147.

E

ē or **ex**, p. 28, ftn.
EARLY MIGRATIONS OF THE GAULS, p. 211.
Emphatic present and past, p. 4, ftn.
Enclitic, p. 16, ftn.; p. 188, n. 3.
Endings, of verbs, 50; 96; 107.
eō, indicative, 185; subjunctive, 224; imperatives, 234; participles, 238; infinitives, 244; p. 228.
Exhortation, subjunctive of, 254, c.
EXILE OF COLLATINUS, p. 196.
Extent, accusative of, 147.

F

fac, p. 84, ftn.
Fear, clauses of, 332.
ferō, 289.
Fifth declension, 189.
filia, dative and ablative plural, p. 25, ftn.
Finite verb, defined, 9, a.
fiō, 273.
First conjugation, 50, 65 f.; 96 f.; 107; 112; 199; 205; 215 f.; 234; 238; 244; p. 218.

First declension, 71.
 gender of nouns, p. 17, ftn.
FOUNDING OF ROME, p. 178.
Fourth conjugation, 173; 200; 205; 215 f.; 234; 238; 244; p. 225.
Fourth declension, 181.
Frequentative verbs, 397, F.
Future indicative, first and second conjugations, active, 66; passive, 107; third conjugation, *regō*, 128; *capio*, 177; fourth conjugation, 173.
Future in indirect questions, 361.
Future perfect, 98, 99, c; in indirect discourse, 401.
futūrum esse ut, 399, aa.
futūrum fuisse ut, 399, bb.

G

Gender, 2; of first declension, p. 17, ftn.
Genitive of nouns in -ius, p. 21, ftn.
Genitive uses, *see* summary, p. 150.
Gerund, 324 f.
Gerundive, 325.

H

hic, 265 and p. 217.
HIS PUBLIC WORKS IN THE CITY, p. 191.
Historical present, p. 180, n.
HORATIUS AT THE BRIDGE, p. 200

I

i-stems, 136 f.
idem, 278 and p. 217; use of, 279.
IF THE ALBANS WIN, p. 184.
ille, 285 and p. 217.
Imperative mood, 234.

Imperfect indicative, 64; *portō*, 65; *moneō*, 65; *regō*, 128; *audiō*, 173; *capiō*, 177.

Imperfect subjunctive, 205, 207.

imperō, construction after, p. 75, ftn. 1.

Impersonal verbs, 4, a; p. 191, n.; 322, b.

Inceptive verbs, 397, G.

Indefinite pronouns, 363.

Indirect discourse, 398 ff.

Indirect object, 62.

Indirect question, 360 f.

Infinitives, 9; 244; of deponent verbs, 250; tenses of, 247; 409.

Infinitives, uses of, complementary, 261; object of verbs of saying and thinking, 246, 252; subject of verb, 299; 409; with *parātus*, p. 213, n.

Instrument, ablative of, 82.

Intention, how expressed, 317.

Interrogative adjective, 340.

Interrogative particles, 341.

Interrogative pronoun, 340.

Interrogative sentences, 341; 344.

Intransitive verbs, defined, 1, III. with dative, 211.

ipse, 330 and p. 217.

is, 194 and p. 216.

iubeō with infinitive, p. 91, ftn. 2.

K

KING NUMA POMPILIUS, p. 179.

L

LARS PORSENA ATTACKS ROME, p. 200.

Limit of motion, 183.

Loan-words in English, p. 229 f.

Locative, 314.

M

maior, pronunciation of, 13, a.

mālō, 382.

Manner, ablative of, 134; p. 46, ftn.

Material for translation, p. 166 ff.

Means, ablative of, 82.

Measure of difference, 311.

meminī, tenses of, p. 148, ftn.

meus, vocative of, p. 112, ftn.

mille, declension and use, 307.

Mixed stems, 137, n. 3.

moneō, p. 220; *see also* second conjugation.

Mood, defined, 7.

subjunctive, 198 ff.

imperative, 234; 236.

in independent sentences, 254.

N

Names, 411.

nec and neque, p. 133, ftn.

Necessity, 322.

nēmō, p. 127, ftn.

Neuter nouns, 73; second declension, 74; third declension, 120, 137; fourth declension, 181.

No, in answers, 342, b.

nōlō, 358.

Nominative uses, 24, 105.

Normal order of words, 38.

num, in indirect questions, 360, ftn.

Number, defined, 3.

Numerals, 306 f.

O

Object of transitive verb, 37; *see* summary, p. 99.

of intransitive verbs, 211.

of *ūtor*, 262.

of verbs of remembering, 384.
 of verbs of emotion, 390.
Obligation or propriety, expressed
 by subjunctive, 344, 2; 393, C,
 example; by passive peri-
 phrastic conjugation, 322; by
oportet, 409.
oportet, tense of infinitive with,
 409.
**OPPRESSION OF THE COMMON PEOP-
 LE**, p. 208.
Optative subjunctive, 202.
Order of words, 38; p. 167, n.
Ordinals, 306.

P

paenitet, construction with, 390,
 ftm.
Participles, 10; forms, 238; of de-
 ponent verbs, 250; declension,
 239; tenses of, 240; perfect
 with active meaning, 370; uses
 of, 241 f.; in ablative absolute,
 353.
Partitive ablative, p. 186, n.
Partitive genitive, 139.
**Passive periphrastic conjuga-
 tion**, 318.
Passive voice, 6; of *portō* and
moneō, 107, 112; *regō*, 128;
capiō, 176; *audiō*, 173; *faciō*,
 273.
Perfect indicative, 96, 112; uses
 of, 99.
Perfect stem, 95.
Perfect subjunctive, 215 f.
Periphrastic conjugations, 317 f.
Personal endings, active, p. 20;
 passive, 107; of perfect indica-
 tive, 96.
Personal pronouns, 294.

**Person of nouns, verbs, and pro-
 nouns**, 4; in indirect discourse,
 402.
persuādēō, construction after, p.
 75, ftm.
petō, construction after, p. 181, n.
Place, from which, 191; in which,
 320; p. 211, n.; to which, 183.
Plenty, ablative of, 406.
Pluperfect, indicative, 97, 112; 99,
 b; subjunctive, 215 f.
plūs, 266.
portō, p. 218; see also first conju-
 gation.
Possessor, dative of, 93; genitive
 of, 47.
Possessive adjectives, 297.
possum, 259; with infinitive,
 261.
praestō, construction with, p. 144,
 ftm. 3.
Predicate, defined, 12.
Predicate accusative, 192.
Predicate adjective or noun, 12, a.
**Predicate genitive or ablative of
 description**, 104, n.
Predicate use of participles, 242;
 with nouns of different gen-
 ders, p. 176, n. 2; p. 208, n. 3.
Prefixes, 395.
Prepositions, 1, VI; use of, 80.
Present tense, 51.
 indicative, of *portō* and *moneō*,
 active, 50; passive, 107;
regō, 128; *audiō*, 173; *sum*,
 90; *eō*, 185.
 subjunctive, 199, f.; of *sum*, 214;
 of *eō*, 224.
Prevention, construction after
 verbs of, 380.
Principal parts, 49.

prohibeō, construction with, p. 146, ftm.; 333.

Pronouns, defined, 1, II; *hic*, 265; *idem*, 278; *ille*, 285; *ipse*, 330; *is*, 194; table of English forms, p. 68, ftm.

indefinite, 363.

interrogative, 340.

personal, 294.

possessive, 297.

reflexive, 295.

relative, declined, 229; agreement, 231; English forms, 229, a.

Pronunciation, of Latin, 13 ff.; of Latin words in English, p. 9.

Protasis, 221.

Purpose,

dative of, 371.

expressed by clause, 287; by gerundive, p. 123, ftm.; by *causā* with genitive of gerund, p. 149, ftm.; by supine, 388.

Q

quam with superlative, 355.

Quantity of vowels, 13, 18; of syllables, 16.

Questions, alternative, 346; how indicated, 341; indirect, 360 f.; mood in, 344.

quī, agreement, 231.

declined, 229.

quidam, 363.

quīn, uses of, 375.

quis, interrogative, 340; indefinite, 363.

quisquam, 363.

quisque, 363.

quod-clauses, 393.

quōminus, 380.

R

Reference, dative of, 372.

Reflexives, 295-297.

regō, p. 222; *see also* third conjugation.

REIGN OF SERVIUS TULLIUS, p. 193.

Relative clauses, with indicative, 232; with subjunctive, p. 128.

Relative pronoun, 229, 231.

Respect, ablative of, 126; supine 389.

rēspūblica, declined, p. 123, ftm.

Result, 310.

Review, p. 27; p. 60; p. 125; p. 152.

rogō, construction after, p. 181.

Rōmānus, position of, p. 44, ftm.

ROME BECOMES A REPUBLIC, p. 194.

rūs, with verbs of motion, 183, 191.

S

SECESSION OF THE PLEBS, p. 210.

Second conjugation, 50; 65 f.; 107; 200; 205; 215 f.; 234; 238; 244; p. 220.

Second declension, nouns, 72, 74, 84; adjectives, 87; p. 215.

Sentence, 12; interrogative, 341.

Separation, 333.

Sequence of tenses, 207; 212, a.

Situation, ablative of, 275; *cum*-clause of, 315; participle, 242; tenses of, p. 119, ftm.

Specification, 126.

Stems, of nouns, p. 42, ftm.; of verbs, 49.

Subject, of finite verb, 35; of infinitive, 246.

Subjunctive forms, present, 198 f.; imperfect, 205; perfect, 215 f.; pluperfect, 215 f.

Subjunctive uses, general types, p. 136.

in independent sentences,
ideal certainty, 218.
interrogative, 344 b.
optative, 202.
volitive, 202; 399, c.

in subordinate clauses,
adversative, 337.
anticipated act, 356.
cause, 378.
conditions, 220 f.; 253.
descriptive, 304, 309.
fear, 332, 338.
indirect discourse, 400.
obligation or propriety, 393, C, example.
purpose, 268, 283, 287.
result, 291, 310.
situation, with *cum*, 315, 350.
substantive clauses, 405, 375.

Substantive clauses, defined, 12, d.
with *ut*, 405; with *quā*, 375; 379;
with *quod*, 393, D; with *quāminus*, 380.

Substantive use of adjectives, 124.

Suffixes, 397.

sum, indicative, 90; 95 f.; subjunctive, 214 f.; imperative, 234; participle, 238; infinitives, 244; p. 227.

Summary of —
ablative uses, p. 135.
accusative uses, p. 104.
cum-clauses, p. 129.

dative uses, p. 142.
genitive uses, p. 150.
infinitive uses, p. 113.
objects, p. 99.
quod-clauses, 393.
subjunctive relative clauses, p. 128.
ut-clauses, 405.

Superlative forms, 157 ff.
declined, 161.
meaning, 162; with *quam*, 355.

Supine, 387 f.

suus, 297.

Syllables, 15; quantity of, 16.

Synopsis, 113.

Syntax, defined, p. 11, ftn.

T

TARQUIN BECOMES KING, p. 189.

Temporal clauses, 350; 315.

Tense, 8.
of indicative, present, 51; imperfect, 64; future, 66; perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, 99.
of subjunctive, 198; of ideal certainty, 218; in indirect questions, 361; in indirect discourse, 401; in result clauses, 310.
of infinitives, 247.
of participles, 240.

Tenses of narration and situation, p. 119, ftn.

THE BATTLE OF THE ALLIA, p. 212.

THE COMPACT BETWEEN THE LEADERS, p. 182.

THE FIRST PILE-BRIDGE OVER THE TIBER, p. 188.

THE FOUNDING OF ROME, p. 178.

THE GAULS SACK ROME, p. 213.
 THE LATIN WAR, p. 202.
 THE LEADERS EXHORT THE CHAMPIONS, p. 183.
 THE PLOT TO RESTORE TARQUIN, p. 197.
 THE SABINE WAR, p. 190.
 THE VOLSCIAN WAR, p. 207.
Third conjugation, *regō*, 128, 200, 215 f.; 234; 238; 244; p. 222; *capiō*, 176.
Third declension, 118; consonant stems, 119 f.; *i*-stems, 136; mixed stems, 137, n. 3; of adjectives, 145, 153.
Time when, 148.
 duration, 147.
To, how translated, p. 169, n.
Transitive verb, defined, 1, III.
trēs, 209.
 TULLUS HOSTILIUS, THIRD KING OF ROME, p. 180.

U

ūnus, 209.
ut-clauses, 405.
uter, declined, 256.

uterque, use of, p. 133, ftn.
ūtor, with ablative, 262.

V

Verb, defined, 1, III.
 agreement, 20.
 deponent, 250.
 impersonal, 4, a.
 intransitive, 1, III; with dative, 211.
 transitive, 1, III.
vir, 84.
vis, 280.
Vocative, 22, 79.
Voice, defined, 6.
Volitive substantive clause, 206
 - ftn. 3.
volō, 301.

W

Want, ablative of, 406.
Wish, 254, c; 212.
With, how translated, p. 177, n.

Y

Years, how designated, 369.
Yes, 342.

possum discedo
 volo incipio
 cupio maturo
 con. nego
 instituo neglego
 coepi audeo
 solvo

verbs as Object.

1. Indirect statement
 the words I know as
 see. Inf. has subject
 as object of verbs,
 ego, tu, etc.



P7-DDE-137

